



# Sahtu Land Use Planning Board



# Sahtu Land Use Plan

August 8, 2013

The Sahtu Land Use Plan and supporting documents can be downloaded at:

[www.sahtulanduseplan.org](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org)



Sahtu Land Use Planning Board  
PO Box 235  
Fort Good Hope, NT X0E 0H0  
Phone: 867-598-2055  
Fax: 867-598-2545  
Email: [info@sahtulanduseplan.org](mailto:info@sahtulanduseplan.org)  
Website: [www.sahtulanduseplan.org](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org)

# Approval

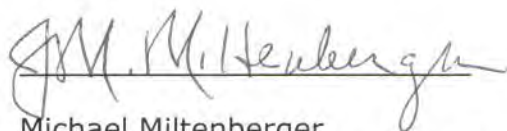
We the undersigned are pleased to have given approval on behalf of the Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated, the Government of the Northwest Territories, and the Government of Canada, in accordance with Section 43 of the Mackenzie Valley Resources Management Act to the *Sahtu Land Use Plan*. It is considered to be effect as of August 8, 2013.  
(Date approved by Minister of AANDC)



Ethel Blondin-Andrew  
Chairperson  
Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated

July 4, 2013

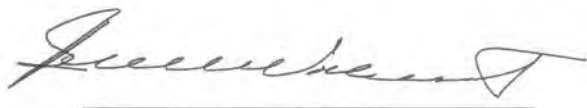
(Date Approved)



Michael Miltenberger  
Minister of Environment and Natural Resources  
Government of the Northwest Territories

July 25, 2013

(Date Approved)



Bernard Valcourt  
Minister of Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada  
Government of Canada

August 8, 2013

(Date Approved)



## From the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board

April 29, 2013

The Sahtu Land Use Planning Board is pleased to present the final Sahtu Land Use Plan. This document represents the culmination of 15 years of land use planning with the purpose of protecting and promoting the existing and future well-being of the residents and communities of the Sahtu Settlement Area, having regard for the interests of all Canadians.

From its beginnings in 1998, the Board's early years focused on research, mapping, and public consultations to develop the goals and vision that are the foundation of the plan. From this a succession of 3 Draft Plans were written. Each Plan was submitted to a rigorous review process and refined through public meetings and written comments. This open and inclusive process was based on a balanced approach that considered how land use impacts the economic, cultural, social, and environmental values of the Sahtu Settlement Area.

The current board would like to acknowledge the contributions of former board members and staff that helped us arrive at this significant milestone. Also, we would like to extend our gratitude to the numerous individuals and organizations who offered their time, energy, ideas, opinions, and suggestions that shaped the final Sahtu Land Use Plan.

Continuing to move forward, we prepare for ongoing participation and productive engagement with our planning partners as we look toward implementing and monitoring this living document.

Mahsi,

Heather Bourassa, Chairperson

Danny Bayha, Vice Chair (GNWT Nominee)

Bob Overvold, Board Member (Canada Nominee)

Collin Bayha, Board Member (SSI Nominee)

# Sahtu Land Use Plan

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acronyms ..... 4

Definitions ..... 5

**CHAPTER 1- INTRODUCTION..... 7**

1.1 Land Use Planning in an Integrated System of Land and Water Management ..... 7

1.2 Mandate for Land Use Planning in the Sahtu Settlement Area ..... 8

1.3 The Sahtu Land Use Plan ..... 9

1.4 Guiding Principles ..... 9

1.5 Vision and Goals ..... 11

    1.5.1 Vision .....11

    1.5.2 Goals .....13

1.6 District-Level Direction for Planning Outside of Community Boundaries ..... 14

    1.6.1 The Great Bear Lake Watershed Management Plan .....15

    1.6.2 The Fort Good Hope-Colville Lake Group Trapping Area .....15

    1.6.3 Tulita District Elder’s Zoning Workshops.....17

1.7 Supporting Documents for the Plan..... 17

**CHAPTER 2- APPLICATION AND EFFECT OF THE PLAN..... 18**

2.1 Area of Application ..... 18

2.2 Application of the Plan to Protected Areas ..... 20

2.3 Land Ownership..... 21

2.4 Application to Land Use Activities and Applicants..... 21

2.5 Plan Exemptions ..... 21

    A. Emergency Activities .....22

    B. Sahtu Dene and Metis Harvesting Rights .....22

    C. Activities Carried Out Within Established Protected Areas .....22

    D. Application to Land Uses that are a Legacy of Decisions Before the Approval of the Plan .....22

    E. Municipal Infrastructure that Would be Prohibited by Zoning.....25

    F. Cleanup and Reclamation Activities.....25

2.6 Authorization to Grant Exceptions to the Plan..... 25

2.7 Effect of the Plan ..... 26

<b>CHAPTER 3- CONFORMITY REQUIREMENTS: ZONING CONDITIONS FOR DEVELOPMENT</b> .....	<b>27</b>
<b>3.1 Spatial Application of Conformity Requirements</b> .....	<b>27</b>
<b>3.2 Introduction to Land Use Zoning</b> .....	<b>28</b>
<b>3.3 General Conformity Requirements</b> .....	<b>29</b>
CR #1- Land Use Zoning .....	29
CR #2- Community Engagement and Traditional Knowledge .....	36
CR #3- Community Benefits .....	37
CR #4- Archaeological Sites and Burial Sites.....	38
CR #5- Watershed Management .....	38
CR #6- Drinking Water .....	38
CR #7- Fish and Wildlife .....	39
CR #8- Species Introductions.....	42
CR #9- Sensitive Species and Features .....	42
CR #10- Permafrost .....	45
CR #11- Project-Specific Monitoring .....	45
CR #12- Financial Security .....	45
CR #13- Closure and Reclamation.....	45
<b>3.4 Special Management Conformity Requirements</b> .....	<b>46</b>
CR #14- Protection of Special Values .....	46
CR #15- The Great Bear Lake Watershed .....	46
CR #16- Fish Farming and Aquaculture .....	47
CR #17- Disturbance of Lakebed.....	47
CR #18- Uses of Du K’ets’Edi Conservation Zone (Sentinel Islands) .....	47
CR #19- Water Withdrawal .....	48
<b>CHAPTER 4- ACTIONS AND RECOMENDATIONS</b> .....	<b>49</b>
<b>4.1 Introduction</b> .....	<b>49</b>
<b>4.2 Actions</b> .....	<b>49</b>
Action #1 - Sahtu Land Use Working Group .....	49
Action #2 - Inspection and Enforcement Priorities .....	51
Action #3 - Access to Wildlife Information.....	52
Action #4 - Water Withdrawals.....	52
<b>4.3 Recommendations</b> .....	<b>53</b>
Recommendation #1 - Air Quality .....	53
Recommendation #2 – Climate Change .....	53
Recommendation #3 – Community Land Use Monitors .....	54
Recommendation #4 – Incidental Harvest .....	55



<b>CHAPTER 5- PLAN IMPLEMENTATION</b> .....	<b>56</b>
<b>5.1 Shared Responsibility For implementation</b> .....	<b>56</b>
<b>5.2 Authorizations That Implement the Plan</b> .....	<b>57</b>
<b>5.3 Implementation of Conformity Requirements through Dispositions</b> .....	<b>58</b>
<b>5.4 Conformity Determination</b> .....	<b>59</b>
<b>5.5 Enforcement</b> .....	<b>59</b>
<b>5.6 Monitoring Implementation of the Plan</b> .....	<b>59</b>
<b>5.7 Amendments</b> .....	<b>60</b>
<b>5.8 Five Year Review</b> .....	<b>60</b>

**List of Appendices**

Appendix 1. Zone Descriptions .....	63
Appendix 2. Map References and Data Sources .....	178

**List of Maps**

Map 1. Sahtu Settlement Area.....	19
Map 2. Land Use Zones .....	32
Map 3. Barren-Ground Caribou and Woodland Caribou Range.....	41
Map 4. Sensitive Species and Features.....	44
Map 5. Zone Boundaries .....	70
Map 6. Zone Boundaries .....	71
Map 7. Zone Boundaries .....	72
Map 8. Zone Boundaries .....	73
Map 9. Zone Boundaries .....	74
Map 10. Zone Boundaries .....	75
Map 11. Zone Boundaries .....	76
Map 12. Zone Boundaries .....	77
Map 13. Zone Boundaries .....	78

**List of Tables**

Table 1. Application of Conformity Requirements to Zone Types .....	27
Table 2. Overview of Land Use Zones .....	29
Table 3. Zone Prohibitions and Applicable Conditions .....	33
Table 4. Wildlife Setbacks, Minimum Altitude and Sensitive Periods .....	40
Table 5. Zone Descriptions.....	64
Table 6. Zones Listed by Zone Number .....	65
Table 7. Zones Listed by Dene Name Alphabetical .....	67
Table 8. Zones Listed by English Name Alphabetical.....	68

**List of Figures**

Figure 1. The Sahtu Land Use Plan and "One Law". .....	11
--	----

## ACRONYMS

AANDC	Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada
CIMP	Cumulative Impact Monitoring Program
COSEWIC	Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada
CR	Conformity Requirement
CWS	Canadian Wildlife Service
CZ	Conservation Zone
DFO	Department of Fisheries and Oceans (now Fisheries and Oceans Canada)
ENR	Department of Environment and Natural Resources (GNWT)
EPA	Established Protected Area
GBLW	Great Bear Lake Watershed
GBLWMP	Great Bear Lake Watershed Management Plan
GNWT	Government of the Northwest Territories
GUZ	General Use Zone
INAC	Indian and Northern Affairs Canada
ITI	Department of Industry, Tourism and Investment (GNWT)
LWBs	Land and Water Boards (SLWB, MVLWB)
MVEIRB	Mackenzie Valley Environmental Impact Review Board
<i>MVLUR</i>	<i>Mackenzie Valley Land Use Regulations</i>
MVLWB	Mackenzie Valley Land and Water Board
<i>MVRMA</i>	<i>Mackenzie Valley Resource Management Act</i>
NEB	National Energy Board
NWT	Northwest Territories
PAS	Protected Areas Strategy
PCA	Parks Canada Agency
PCI	Proposed Conservation Initiative
RRC	Renewable Resources Council
<i>SARA</i>	<i>Species at Risk Act</i>
<i>SDMCLCA</i>	<i>Sahtu Dene and Metis Comprehensive Land Claim Agreement</i>
SLUP	Sahtu Land Use Plan
SLUPB	Sahtu Land Use Planning Board
SLWB	Sahtu Land and Water Board
SMZ	Special Management Zone
SRRB	Sahtu Renewable Resources Board
SSA	Sahtu Settlement Area
SSI	Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated
TK	Traditional Knowledge



## DEFINITIONS

“**Action**” means a measure directed at various bodies, including Designated Sahtu Organizations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial governments, and co-management boards, to advance planning issues or fill data gaps needed to move the Plan forward during future review cycles. By approving this Plan, the approving Parties agree to make reasonable efforts to complete all Actions pertaining to them.

“**applicant**” means an individual, company or organization applying for an authorization relating to the use of land.

“**approving parties**” means the Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated (SSI), and the territorial and federal Ministers who are responsible for approving the Plan.

“**authorization**” includes a licence, permit or other authorization relating to the use of land, water or resources or the deposit of waste, issuable under any federal or territorial law.

“**Board**” means the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board unless the context implies otherwise.

“**community boundary**” means the boundary that delineates the jurisdiction of a local government.

“**community organizations**” means district and community land corporations, the local first nation and/or community council<sup>1</sup>, and the renewable resources council, or any successor organizations to any of these organizations.

“**Conformity Requirement**” means a requirement of this Plan that is to be implemented through the issuance of licences, permits, other authorizations, and dispositions.

“**Designated Sahtu Organization**” means a Sahtu organization designated pursuant to chapter 7 of the *SDMCLCA* and includes the Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated, or any successor organization.

“**disposition**” means the issuance of a lease or interest relating to the use of land and water as per S. 25.2.9 of the *SDMCLCA*, and includes an equivalent interest granted by a district land corporation.

“**ecological integrity**” means the capacity of an ecosystem to support and maintain a balanced, integrated, adaptive community of organisms having a species composition, diversity and functional organization comparable to that of a similar, undisturbed ecosystem in the region.<sup>2</sup>

“**legacy land use**” means a land use activity that is defined and exempted from some or all of the Conformity Requirements as per S. 2.5 D.

“**harvesting**” means gathering, hunting, trapping or fishing in accordance with the *SDMCLCA* or applicable legislation.

---

<sup>1</sup> In some communities, the first nation (band office) and community council are merged into one organization, while in others they remain separate entities. The definition includes both where they are separate.

<sup>2</sup> Karr, JR, Dudley DR. 1981. Ecological perspective on water quality goals. *Environmental Management* 5: 55-68.

“**land owner**” means a district land corporation, the territorial government or the federal government.

“**land use activity**” means a physical activity that involves the use of land, water or resources or the deposit of waste.

“**land**” includes land, waters and other resources.

“**local government**” means any local government established under the laws of the Northwest Territories, including a city, town, village, hamlet, charter community, or settlement, and includes the territorial government acting in the place of a local government pursuant to those laws.

“**participant**” means a person enrolled in the Enrolment Register pursuant to Chapter 4 of the *SDMCLCA*.

“**planning partners**” means residents, communities, Designated Sahtu Organizations, departments and agencies of the territorial and federal government, co-management boards, industry, businesses, non-government organizations and members of the general public who are affected by or interested in participating in the planning process.

“**Recommendation**” means a statement that identifies additional factors or measures for applicants and regulators to consider or act on during project reviews. Recommendations are not legally binding, and approval of this Plan by SSI, the GNWT and Canada does not make Recommendations legally binding.

“**regulator**” means a body having authority under any federal or territorial law to issue an authorization, whether or not the body is a “designated regulatory agency” under Part 5 of the *MVRMA*.

“**Sahtu First Nation**” means the Sahtu Dene and Metis as represented by The Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated, or by any successor to that corporation, as it is defined in the *MVRMA*.

“**Sahtu Settlement Area**” means the area within the Northwest Territories described in Appendix A of the *SDMCLCA*.

“**settlement lands**” means Sahtu lands within the Sahtu Settlement Area outside local government boundaries granted pursuant to S.19.1.2 of the *SDMCLCA* and as set out in schedules I and III, appendix E of the *SDMCLCA*.

“**traditional knowledge**” means knowledge and values, which have been acquired through experience, observation, from the land or from spiritual teachings, and handed down from one generation to another.<sup>3</sup>

“**wildlife**” means all *ferae naturae* in a wild state including fish, mammals and birds.

“**zone**” means an area in which specified land uses are prohibited and specific Conformity Requirements are applied as per Conformity Requirement #1.

---

<sup>3</sup> Traditional Knowledge Policy, GNWT, March 10/05

# CHAPTER 1- INTRODUCTION

---

## 1.1 LAND USE PLANNING IN AN INTEGRATED SYSTEM OF LAND AND WATER MANAGEMENT

The *Sahtu Dene and Metis Comprehensive Land Claim Agreement (SDMCLCA)* is a modern treaty between the Sahtu Dene and Metis and the Crown in right of Canada. The treaty rights of the Sahtu Dene and Metis under the *SDMCLCA* are recognized and affirmed under Canada's Constitution. It is a stated objective of the *SDMCLCA* "to provide the Sahtu Dene and Metis the right to participate in decision making concerning the use, management and conservation of land, water and resources."<sup>4</sup> Chapter 25 of the *SDMCLCA*, Land and Water Regulations, states as its principles that:

- a) An integrated system of land and water management should apply to the Mackenzie Valley
- b) The regulation of land and water in the settlement area and in adjacent areas should be co-ordinated;
- c) Government shall retain the ultimate jurisdiction for the regulation of land and water.<sup>5</sup>

This integrated system of land and water management, enacted through the Mackenzie Valley Resource Management Act (MVRMA), incorporates land use planning, environmental impact assessment and review, and the regulation of land and water use through associated institutions of public government.

The *SDMCLCA* also calls attention to the need for coordination of the activities of the Planning Board, the Review Board, the Land and Water Board, the Renewable Resources Board and Surface Rights Board to be provided for in the MVRMA and other legislation.<sup>6</sup>

While a regional land use plan takes into account the intent for all to work together, for clarity under the MVRMA a land use plan does not:

- (i) alter the powers of the Designated Sahtu Organizations, regulators, or government departments and agencies,
- (ii) make any body responsible to do anything that it lacks the power to do, or
- (iii) restrict the redistribution of powers between federal, territorial or aboriginal governments or within any level of government.

---

<sup>4</sup> *SDMCLCA* S 1.1.1(g).

<sup>5</sup> *SDMCLCA* S 25.1.1

<sup>6</sup> *SDMCLCA* S 25.1.3

## 1.2 MANDATE FOR LAND USE PLANNING IN THE SAHTU SETTLEMENT AREA

As provided in the *SDMCLCA and the MVRMA*, the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board (SLUPB or “the Board”) was established consisting of equal numbers of Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated and government nominees with the jurisdiction “for developing a land use plan for the settlement area and for reviewing and proposing approvals, exceptions and amendments to the plan”.<sup>7</sup>

*The Mackenzie Valley Resource Management Act (MVRMA)* implements the *SDMCLCA*’s land use planning provisions. Part 2 of the *MVRMA* establishes the SLUPB as an institution of public government and describes in more detail the mandate for land use planning in the Sahtu Settlement Area (SSA).

The *MVRMA* states that a land use plan may include:

- (a) “maps, diagrams and other graphic materials;
- (b) written statements, policies, guidelines and forecasts;
- (c) descriptions of permitted and prohibited uses of land, waters and resources;
- (d) authority for the planning board to make exceptions to the plan and the manner of exercising that authority; and
- (e) any other information that the planning board considers appropriate.”<sup>8</sup>

On adoption and approval of the plan

“The ...Sahtu First Nations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial governments, and every body having authority under any federal or territorial law to issue licences, permits or other authorizations relating to the use of land or waters or the deposit of waste, shall carry out their powers in accordance with the land use plan...”<sup>9</sup>

The Board is required to carry out a comprehensive review of the Plan every five years after the Plan takes effect or at other times agreed to by the approving parties. Further information on the requirements of the *MVRMA* relating to Plan implementation is contained in Chapter 5.

The Sahtu Land Use Planning Board was formally established in 1998 when Part 2 of the *MVRMA* came into force. Work was initiated before this time by the Sahtu Land Use Planning Working Group. Board members are nominated by either the Sahtu Secretariat Incorporated (SSI), Government of the Northwest Territories (GNWT), or Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada (AANDC) and are appointed by the Minister of AANDC for 3-year terms.

---

<sup>7</sup> *SDMCLCA* S 25.2.1.

<sup>8</sup> *MVRMA* S. 41(3)

<sup>9</sup> *MVRMA* S. 46(1)

## 1.3 THE SAHTU LAND USE PLAN

The Sahtu Land Use Plan (the Plan) provides broad direction to community organizations, governments, regulators and applicants about how land (including water and other resources) will be conserved, developed and used within the Sahtu Settlement Area (SSA). The Plan outlines what land use activities are appropriate, where, and under what conditions.

The Plan outlines a vision and goals for the conservation, development and use of land within the SSA. It provides direction to achieve the vision and goals in the form of Conformity Requirements (zones and conditions) and also includes supporting Actions and Recommendations. The Board has considered social, cultural, economic and ecological aspects of land use in the development of the Plan.

The Plan provides direction on a range of land uses and land use issues. **It does not restrict or provide direction on subsistence use or harvesting activities of the Sahtu Dene and Metis.**

The Plan is written for a wide variety of users. It is primarily targeted at applicants (those proposing to carry out the land use activities being addressed in the Plan), Designated Sahtu Organizations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial government, and regulators (bodies having authority under any federal or territorial law to issue licences, permits or other authorizations). It may also assist MVEIRB by identifying key considerations for environmental assessments within the SSA.

The Plan addresses a range of social, cultural, economic and ecological values, which may be of interest to a wider readership. The Plan and associated documents (Implementation Guide, Background Report, and Action Plan) include a significant amount of information about the Sahtu Settlement Area, its values and resources, and the future needs and interests of residents and communities. They should be excellent resources for anyone interested in learning about the Sahtu region and its people.

The rest of this chapter sets out the principles, vision, goals and direction from the three Districts in the Sahtu Settlement Area that guided the overall direction of the Sahtu Land Use Plan.

## 1.4 GUIDING PRINCIPLES

Land use planning under the *SDMCLCA* is guided by the following principles:

- (a) "the purpose of land use planning is to protect and promote the existing and future well-being of the residents and communities of the settlement area having regard to the interests of all Canadians;
- (b) special attention shall be devoted to
  - i) Protecting and promoting the existing and future social, cultural and economic well-being of the participants;
  - ii) Lands used by participants for harvesting and other uses of resources; and

- iii) the rights of participants under [their] agreement;
- (d) water resources planning is an integral part of land use planning;
- (e) land use planning shall directly involve communities and Designated Sahtu Organizations; and
- (f) the plan developed through the planning process shall provide for the conservation, development and utilization of land, resources and waters."<sup>10</sup>

In addition to the principles noted above, the following objectives of the *SDMCLCA* apply to land use in the Sahtu Settlement Area:

1. To recognize and encourage the Sahtu way of life which is based on the cultural and economic relationship between the Sahtu and the land (1.1.1.c);
2. To encourage the self-sufficiency of the Sahtu and to enhance their ability to participate fully in all aspects of the economy (1.1.1.d);
3. To integrate planning and management of wildlife and wildlife habitat with the planning and management of all types of land and water use in order to protect wildlife and wildlife habitat (13.1.1.f); and
4. To protect and conserve the wildlife and environment of the settlement area for present and future generations (1.1.1.h).

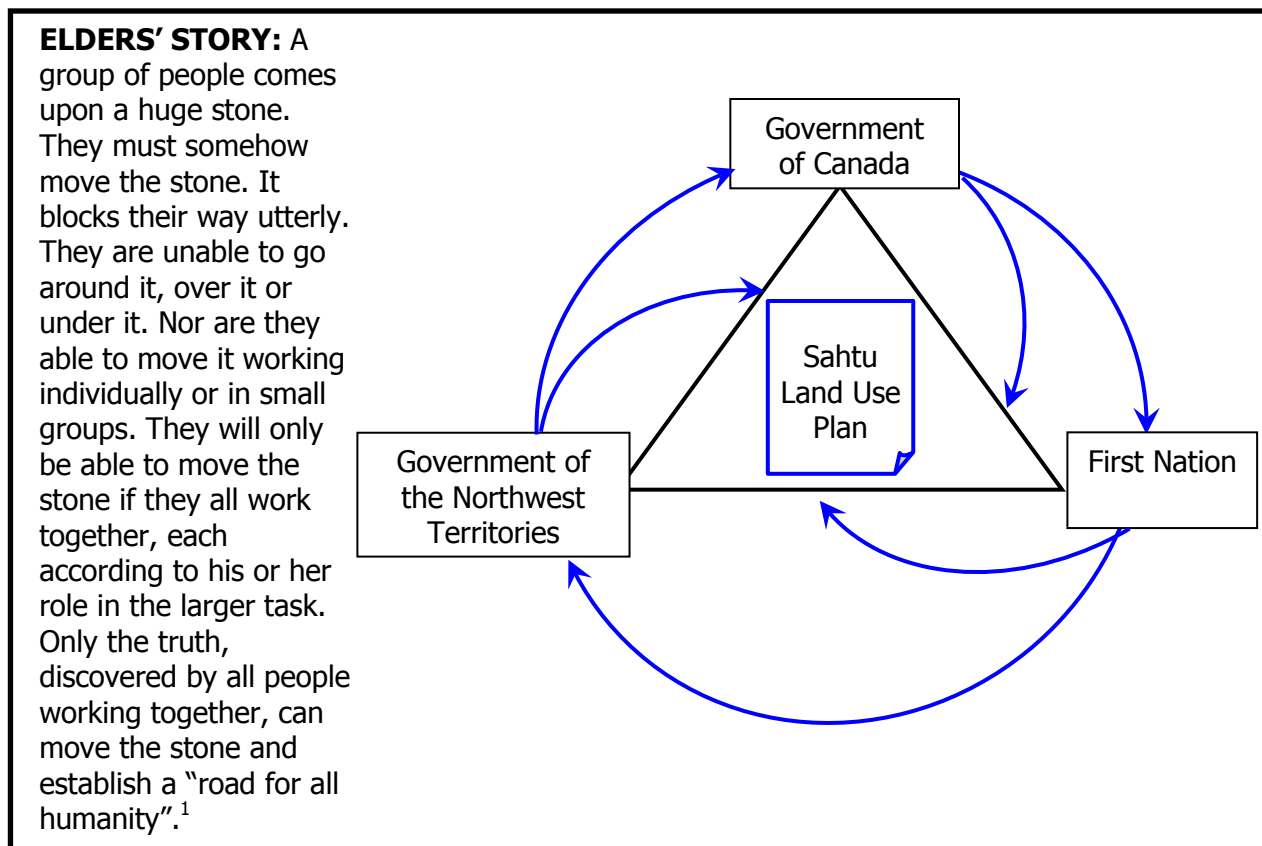
The Sahtu Land Use Plan provides a unique opportunity to reconcile the different world views and systems of laws and beliefs of the Sahtu Dene and Metis, government and other stakeholders. Plan development brings communities and government together in a collaborative decision-making process to integrate their different values into one plan that guides land use for the region. The Great Bear Lake Working Group called this concept "One Law"; it is illustrated in Figure 1<sup>11</sup>. The Plan's mandate implies the need to integrate communities' values into the decision-making process at the most fundamental level. The Plan's guiding role in the regulatory process and its mandatory effect can ensure that the collective decisions reflected in the plan will promote community well being. The collaborative spirit of Plan development is captured in the following Elders' Story.

---

<sup>10</sup> SLCA S. 25.2.4

<sup>11</sup> Modified from Charlie Neyelle, Deline, February 5/10

**Figure 1. The Sahtu Land Use Plan and "One Law".**



## 1.5 VISION AND GOALS

This section describes the vision and goals for the Sahtu Settlement Area as identified by communities and participants in the planning process. The Dene and Metis people's vision and goals are holistic, covering all aspects of their future aspirations. Not all of these can or will be addressed by the Plan through conditions for land use (e.g. educational vision and goals). This holistic vision and goals for the Sahtu Settlement Area are provided for the consideration of organizations, departments and agencies as they carry out their respective mandates.

### 1.5.1 Vision

Considerable work was completed with Sahtu communities and planning partners early in the planning process to identify a vision for the Sahtu Settlement Area. Participants were asked to identify their vision for the land, five years and 100 years in the future. The results of this work were compiled in a SLUPB report called "Building a Vision for the Land"<sup>12</sup>.

<sup>12</sup> Building a Vision for the Land, SLUPB, November 2000, [http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/documents/presentations\\_updates/BuildingVision-02-2001.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/documents/presentations_updates/BuildingVision-02-2001.pdf)



Between 2002 and 2005 a working group was established to develop a management plan for the Great Bear Lake watershed, with extensive participation from Délíne, relevant federal and territorial government departments and the co-management Boards. A vision and goals was developed for each aspect of the Great Bear Lake Watershed Management Plan (GBLWMP) to guide their planning (e.g. for each of the zone types, communications, culture and education, research and monitoring, enforcement, contaminated site remediation). The vision below reflects input from both the SLUPB's visioning work and the GBLWMP.

### **Sahtu Vision**

*The ecological integrity of the region is maintained. The land, water and natural resources on which people depend are clean, healthy and abundant. There is a balance of industrial development and vast wilderness areas, a model of development hand in hand with environmental protection. Conservation Zones and legislated protected areas protect the most important places and values for future generations, while careful management allows sustainable development to proceed in all other areas.*

*The region has cultural integrity. People use the land as they always have for hunting, trapping, fishing, gathering, spiritual renewal and healing. Elders are respected and play a central role in passing down the language, traditional skills, knowledge, stories and importance of the land to community leaders and the youth, strengthening cultural and spiritual connections to the land. Elders work with teachers to teach both traditional and modern skills in schools, which equip the youth to thrive and adapt in a changing environment.*

*Communities have sufficient authority, capacity and involvement in managing and monitoring land use to work in true partnership with land and resource managers, co-management Boards, and regulators. Together, they provide a clear, efficient regulatory system that promotes sustainable development. Land use activities are designed, regulated and implemented with consideration for the specific values and characteristics of the people and the region. Land use decisions respect and integrate Sahtu Dene and Metis traditional laws, beliefs and management practices with scientific and regulatory frameworks. There is trust and respect amongst all participants in land and resource management.*

*Long-term economic planning has resulted in strong renewable and non-renewable industries, providing economic self-sufficiency and stability, and employment diversity for the region. Residents are able to find work in their communities and on the land. Good access and infrastructure in the region reduces the cost of power, goods and services. A strong emphasis on training has created a skilled workforce to maximize employment and business opportunities.*

## 1.5.2 Goals

Broad goals have been developed based on the vision and issues identified in this planning process. Supporting goals identify targets or actions needed to achieve the vision.

1. Maintain the ecological integrity of the Sahtu Settlement Area. The following supporting goals will contribute to this broader goal:
  - a. Protect environmentally significant areas and ecologically representative areas.
  - b. Water quality, quantity and ecological productivity will not be degraded and will be restored and enhanced where degradation has occurred.
  - c. Consider and mitigate long-term cumulative impacts to land and water from land use activities.
  - d. Remediate current contaminated and waste sites.
  - e. Maintain or increase the populations of wildlife on which people depend, including but not limited to woodland and barren ground caribou, moose, Dall's sheep, furbearers, waterfowl and fish.
  - f. Consider impacts of, and adaptations to, climate change in decisions affecting land, water and other resources.
  - g. Build on the Cumulative Impact Monitoring Program (CIMP) to develop a research and monitoring program necessary to understand and monitor the ecological and cultural integrity of the Sahtu Settlement Area
  - h. Manage transboundary issues in cooperation with organizations from adjacent regions.
  
2. Maintain or enhance the cultural integrity of the Sahtu Settlement Area. The following supporting goals will contribute to this broader goal:
  - a. Protect places of significant cultural or spiritual value.
  - b. Enhance protection of heritage sites, and important subsistence use and harvesting areas.
  - c. Document the cultural heritage of the SSA, including the names and locations of important places, trails, burial sites, archaeological sites, and undocumented stories associated with particular places and meanings.
  - d. Document traditional ecological knowledge and protocols of the Sahtu Dene and Metis and integrate this knowledge into all aspects of land and resource management, including research and monitoring.
  - e. Increase opportunities for residents to spend time on the land.
  - f. Increase use and transfer of cultural skills, values, practices and language among residents, especially from Elders to the youth.
  - g. The goals identified under Item 3 also contribute to cultural integrity.

3. Increase community capacity and decision-making authority in land and resource management.
  - a. Increase community capacity and engagement in regulatory processes, resource management, monitoring and enforcement. Joint planning is the end goal.
  - b. Improve communication and coordination between community organizations, regulators, resource managers, and enforcement personnel.
  - c. Improve clarity, consistency and efficiency of the regulatory environment in conjunction with current regulatory improvement efforts of the federal government and other regulators.
  - d. Advance and complete self-government negotiations.
4. Increase the economic self-sufficiency of the region through sustainable development.
  - a. Address barriers to industry investment and increase non-renewable resource development in the region.
  - b. Develop renewable resource industries, including commercial hunting, fishing, forestry and tourism.
  - c. Address community and industry needs for access and infrastructure development.
  - d. Maximize benefits to Sahtu residents and communities from development.
  - e. Establish long-term training programs for residents and communities in all aspects of renewable and non-renewable resource development, business, and financial management.

## **1.6 DISTRICT-LEVEL DIRECTION FOR PLANNING OUTSIDE OF COMMUNITY BOUNDARIES**

Regional planning is most successful when the residents have the opportunity to do their own internal planning first, to decide for themselves how they want their lands, waters and other resources conserved, developed and used. Under S. 41(4) of the *MVRMA*, a planning board shall take into consideration a land use plan proposed by a district land corporation for its settlement lands in the settlement area, and may incorporate that plan into the land use plan for the settlement area.

While some districts did provide direction to the Board on the zoning of specific settlement land parcels, in general, direction was provided for the entire district, and was not restricted to settlement lands. Communities have a holistic perspective on land management; residents feel that the landscape should be managed as a whole, not according to parcels of ownership. Key direction provided by the communities and Districts are described below.

### 1.6.1 The Great Bear Lake Watershed Management Plan

The Great Bear Lake Watershed Management Plan (GBLWMP) was a planning initiative driven by the Déline Land Corporation, Déline First Nation and Déline Renewable Resources Council. The GBLWMP was developed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group (Working Group) by consensus from 2002-2005. The Working Group was a coalition of community organizations, government, co-management boards and other organizations.

The GBLWMP provided a wealth of information about Déline's vision for the management of the land. The zoning for the Déline District comes directly from the GBLWMP, with some minor modifications as directed by Déline in the years since. Many other elements of the Sahtu Land Use Plan were significantly shaped by the GBLWMP – the vision and goals, and many of the Conformity Requirements, Actions and Recommendations. Much of the direction initially developed for the Great Bear Lake watershed was eventually applied throughout the Sahtu Settlement Area as a result of community discussions and common values.

The GBLWMP defines a vision, goals, policies, conditions and prohibitions for all aspects of land use within the Great Bear Lake Watershed (GBLW). In particular, the GBLWMP emphasizes the maintenance of ecological and cultural integrity of the watershed in its vision:

a. **Ecological Integrity:** The ecological integrity of this unique watershed is maintained and, where necessary and feasible, restored. Great Bear Lake is kept clean and bountiful for all time. Activities in the watershed are designed, regulated and carried out with the particular characteristics of GBLW ecosystems in mind, including their generally very low biological productivity and slowness to recover from degradation. The generally pristine quality of Great Bear Lake water is maintained. All resource uses are consistent with conservation.

b. **Cultural integrity:** Activities in the GBLW protect and promote the existing and future social, cultural and economic well-being of residents of the watershed, while also having regard to the interests of all Canadians. Since a significant degree of self-determination is fundamental to social, cultural and economic well being, any assessment of the acceptability of proposed activities in the GBLW gives very strong consideration to whether Déline supports the proposed activities. Déline residents and others are able to find work in the community and on the land.

### 1.6.2 The Fort Good Hope-Colville Lake Group Trapping Area

The Fort Good Hope-Colville Lake Group Trapping Area (GTA), which is the basis for the K'asho Got'ine District boundary, is the traditional territory of the K'asho Got'ine people. The residents all have similar explanations of how it came to be.

"In the early 20s, 30s and 40s, outsiders were coming in looking for gold and diamonds and disrupting our way of life. The Elders negotiated with the Crown in England and with the help of a Bishop from France and it resulted in the Group Trapping Area. Now we have that land that

the K'asho Got'ine call their home base, their traditional land. From generation to generation we try to make sure that the land and traditional values of our people are protected."<sup>13</sup>

"In the last thousand years or so our ancestors have talked about taking care of our wildlife. In 1951 I was a couple of years old and all the people around Fort Good Hope and Colville Lake gathered and government came in and said they wanted to make a boundary around that little piece of land. The people disagreed and said, "This is our land and we are going to make a decision on how our land shall be governed and how big it shall be for ourselves. It's up to us to decide." All the elders spoke at the time and they said, "If it's just a little small piece of land, what good is that for us? We want to make a boundary where it covers all of the areas, all of our burial grounds, all of the areas where our people are resting out on the land." Everybody that lived in Fort Good Hope and Colville Lake, even the people from the mountains, the river people around Little Chicago, everyone that lived in the surrounding area of Fort Good Hope and Colville Lake gathered and they made that boundary. All out towards the barren lands, all the areas that our people worked in, or harvested, or trapped in that area, that is what they all marked out to be our new trapping area. For as large as our boundary was drawn, this was as far as we had people resting on the land. That is how they decided on this boundary. Before that there was no control on the land. People went out trapping with poisons and that's why we wanted to make this group trapping area, so that we have control of what goes on on our land in regards to trapping and development and everything."<sup>14</sup>

"When they selected the GTA around 1951, they looked at the map. It was only for us; it was our land. They wanted us to select a small piece of land but our elders selected a big piece of land. We need to hold onto what our elders selected for us; they did not choose for others in the region. I was there when the Elders selected the GTA. Everything selected in that area is for the K'asho Got'ine control. They selected that land because everyone was attacking that area. It is for the future generation; we want our future generation to be in control. We have to start making good decisions for our future generation. Our leaders selected that GTA. We want to keep it that way. It is for our use. We lived on this land for millions of years. We discuss what is going on here. It is like our words are being wasted. I wish that it was written down that the land was selected for us and not only for the surface but for the subsurface."<sup>15</sup>

The Group Trapping Area was established to protect the residents harvesting rights from the new outsiders coming on to their lands, but to the residents, it was much more than that – it gave them exclusive control over how their land was used and the ability to protect it. Today, there are many more uses than trapping. The residents of Fort Good Hope and Colville Lake maintain that anyone wanting to conduct any land use within the Group Trapping Area must first come talk to them as the stewards of this area.

The Group Trapping Area was first registered in the 1956 Northwest Territories Game Ordinance (Part VII), which allowed those named in the group (or their dependants) the exclusive right to hunt fur-bearing animals (beaver, fisher, fox, lynx, marten, mink, muskrat, otter, skunk, squirrel, weasel or ermine) within the area described in the certificate of registration. It still exists under the current *NWT Wildlife Act (Trapping Regulations)*.<sup>16</sup>

---

<sup>13</sup> Joe Grandjambe, K'asho Got'ine District, SLUPB Public Hearing, May 4, 2011, Norman Wells.

<sup>14</sup> Elder J. B. Gully of Colville Lake. SLUPB Public Hearing, May 4, 2011, Norman Wells.

<sup>15</sup> Elder Gabe Kochon of Fort Good Hope, SLUPB Follow-up Meeting, June 14, 2011, Fort Good Hope.

<sup>16</sup> Gullberg, Wiest, MacPherson & Kay, December 10, 2001. Questions about the Fort Good Hope Registered Group Trapping Area, Prepared for the SLUPB.

S. 13.9.4 (c) of the SDMCLCA re-affirms the existence of the Fort Good Hope-Colville Lake Group Trapping Area. It further states that the area may not be reduced in size without the consent of the Designated Sahtu Organizations in Fort Good Hope and Colville Lake.

Regardless of its legal origins, the direction from the communities has been very strong and consistent. The Plan must include the Group Trapping Area and recognize its original purpose as they understand it – it is their traditional territory, and intended for their use and management.

### 1.6.3 Tulita District Elder’s Zoning Workshops

In the Fall of 2010, the Tulita District provided specific direction to the Board regarding the zoning of all settlement land parcels in their district. At the same time, the future boundary of Nááts’ihch’oh was evolving as a result of the national park reserve establishment process, and Shúhtagot’ine Néné’s future as a national wildlife area was being reconsidered.

In January 2011, the Board held a zoning workshop in Tulita for the District, with participation from SSI, the GNWT and the federal government to re-assess the overall zoning for the District. All of the government bodies involved in the establishment of the national park reserve and national wildlife area were invited to assist in discussion and consideration of all the interests and values present in the area that needed to be considered. The Tulita District decided to consult with its Elders to get their input on the zoning before finalizing their decision. Following those meetings, the Tulita District forwarded the SLUPB a resolution on February 25, 2011 outlining its final direction for zoning within the Tulita District. That zoning is reflected in the current zoning map.

## 1.7 SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS FOR THE PLAN

Three additional SLUPB documents are intended to support the Land Use Plan and may be updated from time to time:

- 1) **Implementation Guide** – Contains information requirements, interpretation and criteria for conformity determinations to guide applicants and regulators in their implementation of the Plan’s Conformity Requirements.
- 2) **Background Report** - All background information not essential to the interpretation or implementation of the Plan has been placed in a separate Background Report. This includes information on the people and communities of the SSA, extensive mapping on the biophysical and economic values and features, and information on the regulatory environment.
- 3) **An Action Plan** – Outlines the Board’s perspective on its monitoring role, and provides additional information and guidance on Actions, Recommendations, and other initiatives to advance the land use plan in preparation for the first five-year review.

Readers are referred to these supporting documents to broaden their understanding of the Sahtu Land Use Plan.

# CHAPTER 2- APPLICATION AND EFFECT OF THE PLAN

---

## 2.1 AREA OF APPLICATION

The Plan applies throughout the Sahtu Settlement Area as shown in Map 1 except for “lands in a settlement area that comprise a park to which the *Canada National Parks Act* applies, that have been acquired pursuant to the *Historic Sites and Monuments Act* or that are situated within the boundaries of a local government.”<sup>17</sup>

If a national park or local government boundary in the SSA is expanded, the Plan will cease to apply to the area of the expansion. If the Parks Canada Agency acquires additional lands with respect to a National Historic Site of Canada (NHSC) that it administers, the Plan will cease to apply to those lands.

Community boundaries (lands with the boundaries of a local government) where the Plan does not apply are shown on Map 1.<sup>18</sup> For communities where Block Land Transfer Area land extends outside of the community boundaries (Norman Wells, Deline and Tulita), those portions of the Block Land Transfer Area outside the community boundary are subject to the provisions of the Plan.

Interpretive guidance on this section is provided in the Implementation Guide. The application of the Plan to protected areas is expanded on in the next section.

---

<sup>17</sup> *MVRMA* S. 34

<sup>18</sup> Community governments prepare and administer community plans within community boundaries.



# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 1: Sahtu Settlement Area



- |                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Access Roads        | Rivers and Streams             |
| Winter Roads        | Lakes and Large Rivers         |
| District Boundary   | Established Protected Areas    |
| Commissioner's Land | Community Boundaries           |
|                     | Sahtu Settlement Area Boundary |

\* For Map References please consult the Appendix

## 2.2 APPLICATION OF THE PLAN TO PROTECTED AREAS

In the NWT, establishment of many protected areas is coordinated through the Protected Areas Strategy (PAS). In addition to the PAS process, Nááts'ihch'oh National Park Reserve and Tukut Nogait National Park are following a process specific to national park creation as described in the *SDMCLCA*, and the Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail is being established as a commitment described in the *SDMCLCA*. There are a number of protected areas at different stages of establishment. Some areas have been granted protection or interim protection under legislation, and some have been protected under the land claim.

As noted under 2.1 above, the *MVRMA* exempts lands administered and owned by the Parks Canada Agency. The Plan, however, has a role in the establishment or expansion of a National Park, or in the acquisition of a NHSC by Parks Canada.<sup>19</sup>

The *MVRMA* does not grant a similar exemption for other types of protected areas. Both the establishment of other protected areas, and management of land use within them, are subject to the Plan. However, upon establishment, such areas will be subject to management direction from the sponsoring legislation, and in many cases, management plans developed specifically for these areas. In order to avoid conflict and duplication with that direction, the Plan will not provide any further direction to protected areas established under the Protected Areas Strategy, or otherwise (in the case of Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail) once they are completed.

The approach of the Plan is to zone all areas proposed for protection - including initiatives for Parks Canada to establish a national park or to acquire a national historic site – as Proposed Conservation Initiatives, having the same status as Conservation Zones under the Plan until the protected area or national park is established and the national historic site is acquired. Once a national park is established or a national historic site is acquired by Parks Canada, the Plan will cease to apply by operation of the *MVRMA*. These areas are designated as Established Protected Areas in the Plan's zoning. Once a proposed protected area is established, it too will be designated as an Established Protected Area. All Established Protected Areas will be managed according to their sponsoring legislation management plans and/or management agreements as determined during the establishment process. The Plan will provide no further direction within these areas.

A change in boundary or status of an area being proposed for protection (through either PAS, Parks Canada process or otherwise) affects the Plan's zoning and will require a Plan amendment as per the process described in Chapter 5, including approval by SSI, the GNWT and Canada. This can take considerable time. Where Plan amendments are anticipated, discussions with the SLUPB should be started as early as possible so that any Plan amendment can be considered and approved at the same time as the final establishment of the protected area. For clarity, upon the establishment of a park or protected area which encompasses some but not all of a PCI, the SLUPB will engage the approving parties with regard to alternate zoning for all portions of the PCI. Information documented on the values of the PCI during the park or protected area establishment process should be used to set out special management conditions for the portion of the PCI excluded from the park or protected area.

---

<sup>19</sup> *MVRMA* S. 46(2).

## 2.3 LAND OWNERSHIP

Application of the Sahtu Land Use Plan is not affected by land ownership. The Plan applies equally to activities carried out on Crown Land, Commissioner's Land and Sahtu Settlement Lands.

## 2.4 APPLICATION TO LAND USE ACTIVITIES AND APPLICANTS

Except where a land use is covered by a specific exemption described in this Chapter, the Plan applies to any land use activity pursuant to the *SDMCLCA* and the *MVRMA*. Section 25.2.9 of the *SDMCLCA* states that:

"Upon approval of a land use plan, those authorities with jurisdiction to grant licences, permits, leases or interests relating to the use of land and water in the settlement area shall conduct their activities and operations in accordance with the plan."

Section 46(1) of the *MVRMA* states that:

"The ...Sahtu First Nations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial governments, and every body having authority under any federal or territorial law to issue licences, permits or other authorizations relating to the use of land or waters or the deposit of waste, shall carry out their powers in accordance with the land use plan..."

These sections mean that the plan applies to land uses that require an authorization under any federal or territorial legislation or that may be authorized by a disposition of an interest in land from government or a district land corporation. Chapter 5 (sections 5.2 and 5.3) and the Implementation Guide provide more detail on this topic.

The Plan does not distinguish between land uses proposed by private individuals and companies, government, a community organization, or a Sahtu Dene or Metis person.

## 2.5 PLAN EXEMPTIONS

The land use activities identified below are exempt on an ongoing basis from all Conformity Requirements of this Plan (A, B, and C below), or from specific Conformity Requirements as identified for each of the categories below (D, E, and F below), despite any requirement for an authorization or disposition.

## A. Emergency Activities

Where an emergency threatens public safety, life, property or the environment, a person may carry out such land use activities as are necessary to cope with the emergency and such activities are exempt from all of the Plan's Conformity Requirements.

Subsection 17(2) of the *Mackenzie Valley Land Use Regulations* requires the person who carries out such land use activities to immediately send a written report to the SLWB describing the duration, nature and extent of the activities. The SLUPB requests that such reports be sent to the SLUPB as well and also describe what restorative measures, consistent with the vision and goals of the Plan and the values of the zone in which the activity was conducted, are planned.

## B. Sahtu Dene and Metis Harvesting Rights

The following land use activities are exempt from all of the Plan's Conformity Requirements:

- i) any harvesting of wildlife or trees that a participant may engage in as a right under the *SDMCLCA*, and
- ii) any activity included in an associated right of access under the *SDMCLCA*.

## C. Activities Carried Out Within Established Protected Areas

As per S.2.2, once a protected area is fully established under its respective legislation, activities carried out within the Established Protected Area are exempt from all of the Plan's Conformity Requirements. The area will be managed according to the legislation under which it is established, and if applicable, any management plan developed for the protected area.

## D. Application to Land Uses that are a Legacy of Decisions Before the Approval of the Plan

The *MVRMA* and *SDMCLCA* provide for land use plans to be implemented by authorizations and dispositions, and do not give land use plans retroactive effect.

Accordingly, a land use that has been authorized when the Plan is approved may be undertaken or continued despite any nonconformity with the Plan until the authorization or disposition on which it depends expires or becomes eligible for renewal or amendment. From that date forward the Plan applies to the land use to the extent provided for below.

### Definition of legacy land uses

1. Legacy land uses are:

- 1.1. Ongoing or proposed land uses for which one or more applicable authorizations have been issued under federal or territorial law prior to the Plan coming into effect;



1.2. Land uses for which authorizations are required in order to exercise rights created by or pursuant to a disposition of interests or entitlements that were issued by the Crown or a district land corporation prior to the Plan coming into effect, including, but not limited to, the following interests or entitlements:

- 1.2.1. Coal lease;
- 1.2.2. Coal licence;
- 1.2.3. Coal permits
- 1.2.4. Dredging lease;
- 1.2.5. Quarry lease;
- 1.2.6. Prospecting permit;
- 1.2.7. Mineral claim;
- 1.2.8. Mineral lease;
- 1.2.9. Oil or gas exploration licence;
- 1.2.10. Significant discovery licence;
- 1.2.11. Production Licence;
- 1.2.12. Norman Wells Proven Area Agreement<sup>20</sup>;
- 1.2.13. Timber Cutting Permit
- 1.2.14. Timber Cutting Licence
- 1.2.15. (Federal) Surface land lease, easement or reserve, or licence of occupation for a purpose related to the use;
- 1.2.16. (Territorial) Surface lease, easement, licence, right of way, permission to occupy, reserve, quarry permit or quarry lease issued under the Commissioner's Land Act and Commissioner's Land Use Regulations; or
- 1.2.17. An interest in land granted by a district land corporation that is equivalent to any of these interests or instruments;

1.3. Land uses for which authorizations are required in order to exercise rights created by or pursuant to successor interests or entitlements to those identified in 1.2.

- 1.3.1. Successor interests or entitlements are created by:
  - 1.3.1.1. the transfer or assignment of an interest or entitlement identified in 1.2;  
or
  - 1.3.1.2. the granting of a new interest or entitlement when specified requirements or conditions relating to an interest or entitlement identified in 1.2 have been met;

1.4. Land uses for which authorizations are required that are necessarily incidental to the exercise of rights created by the interests or entitlements identified in 1.2 and 1.3; and

---

<sup>20</sup> Most of the area to which the Norman Wells Proven Area Agreement applies lies within the Norman Wells community boundary where the Plan does not apply pursuant to *MVRMA* S. 34. The small portion lying outside community boundaries within the larger Block Land Transfer is subject to the Plan, but is considered a legacy land use and subject to the exemptions set out in this section.

- 1.5. Land uses identified in 1.1 – 1.4 for which renewals or extensions of authorizations have been granted or are pending, provided that the application for renewal or extension was submitted prior to the expiry date.
2. Subject to 1.5, a legacy land use ceases when its authorization expires, is surrendered or is cancelled.

### **Exemption of Legacy Land Uses from Certain CRs**

3. Subject to 3.1, legacy land uses are exempt from:
  - A) the application of CRs 1, 16, and 18
  - B) and from CR 17 if it would prohibit the issuance of the interest or entitlement (or the exercise of the associated right).
- 3.1. This exemption does not apply to authorizations for renewals or extensions that increase the geographic scope of legacy land uses or alter these uses in other significant ways unless the extensions or other changes are necessarily incidental to the exercise of rights pursuant to interests and entitlements enumerated in 1.2 and 1.3.
- 3.2. Where a regulator, land owner or applicant is uncertain whether 3.1 applies to a proposed activity, it may request a conformity determination from the SLUPB.

### **Conformity of Legacy Land Uses with Remaining CRs**

4. Subject to 4.1 and 4.2, any authorizations or the renewal or extension of authorizations for legacy land uses that are issued after the Plan comes into effect shall require conformity of these land uses with all of the CRs in the Plan except for those listed in 3.
  - 4.1. Where an authorization, renewal or extension is issued pursuant to a legislative provision that does not allow for changes to conditions governing the land use, that land use is exempt from all CRs.
  - 4.2. Where an existing tourism operator licence is being renewed that does not require a land use permit or water licence, and for which no changes in conditions are being sought, that land use is exempt from all CRs.

Where the application of a CR would make it impossible to continue with a legacy land use, despite the reasonable and bona fide efforts of the applicant to bring that use into compliance with the Plan, the SLUPB may consider a request to grant an exception to the application of the CR to that activity as provided in S. 2.6.

Additional guidance on the intent and implementation of these provisions on legacy land uses is provided in the Implementation Guide.

## E. Municipal Infrastructure that Would be Prohibited by Zoning

Lands immediately adjacent to community boundaries provide a variety of services for communities including access, granular resources, power (e.g. wind or hydro), existing and future infrastructure (airports, water, sewage facilities, telecommunications), and land for future community expansion. It is important that the Plan provide for the future growth of communities and their access, infrastructure and service needs.

Accordingly, the following land uses, when located outside of community boundaries, are exempt from CR #1 – Land Use Zoning (e.g. exempt from the prohibitions on quarrying, power development, and forestry in Conservation Zones):

- a) the development of new municipal infrastructure necessary for community use or service;
- b) activities authorized under a municipal water licence; and
- c) the removal of quarry material, as needed for municipal operations and the construction of municipal infrastructure.

## F. Cleanup and Reclamation Activities

Activities related to the cleanup and reclamation of contaminated sites or historic industrial sites are exempt from CR #1 – Land Use Zoning.

## 2.6 AUTHORIZATION TO GRANT EXCEPTIONS TO THE PLAN

The application of the Plan can be changed by using the SLUPB's power to grant exceptions to the Plan. Section 41(3)(d) of the MVRMA states that a land use plan may include "authority for the planning board to make exceptions to the plan and the manner of exercising that authority." Under the heading "Functions after plan approval", the MVRMA states that:

*44. Subsequent to the approval of a land use plan, a planning board shall ...*

*(b) where so authorized by the plan, consider applications for exceptions to the plan.*

This section of the Plan provides the authorization for the exercise of this power by the SLUPB. More information on the process for granting exceptions is provided in the Implementation Guide.

The Planning Board may consider applications for exceptions to the Plan that would limit or waive a condition of land use, but not a zoning prohibition. This section of the Plan does not authorize the Board to grant an exception to allow a use that is prohibited by a zoning CR in the Plan. Exceptions may be granted for various reasons, including but not limited to addressing unforeseen consequences, addressing new land uses or new information not available during plan development, and to provide flexibility to address unique circumstances (e.g. if an applicant can demonstrate that a condition may prevent the continuation of an existing land use). Exceptions may also be used to temporarily address questions of interpretation, but this



will be followed by a statement of interpretation or a plan amendment proposal as soon as possible to clarify the Plan's requirements.

The SLUPB will consider granting an exception to the Plan for an authorization or a land use pursuant to its power under MVRMA s. 44(b) where the applicant can demonstrate to the Board that:

- the land use for which the authorization is required will not have a significant impact on a value or objective that the CR is intended to protect or achieve;
- the application of the CR through the authorization would impose an unreasonable burden on the land use that is disproportionate to the benefit that would be achieved through compliance with the CR or that it could constitute a regulatory taking or expropriation; or
- the circumstances relating to the authorization or land use justify an exception for other reasons.

## 2.7 EFFECT OF THE PLAN

The Plan has legal effect pursuant to the provisions quoted above in section 2.4 of this Chapter and the operation of sections 5.2 and 5.3. The Plan provides legally binding direction to regulators, land owners and applicants through "Conformity Requirements," to be implemented in the process of authorizing land use activities and granting dispositions.

In addition, the Plan provides direction to various bodies through Actions, to be implemented outside the regulatory process. By approving the Plan, the approving parties agree to make reasonable efforts to carry out the Actions directed at them. The Plan also includes non-binding recommendations for the consideration of applicants and regulators.

The responsibility of regulators under the *MVRMA* to act in accordance with land use plans includes the responsibility to withhold authorizations for non-conforming land uses unless an exception to the plan is available under the plan and has been granted by the Board, and to attach conditions within their authority that are necessary to implement the Plan's Conformity Requirements. Regulators may attach terms and conditions to their authorizations that are more stringent than Plan requirements.

The responsibility of land owners under the *MVRMA* to act in accordance with land use plans includes the responsibility to withhold dispositions related to the use of land or waters for non-conforming uses. Dispositions are only subject to CRs #1, 16, and 18, which prohibit specific land use activities as per S. 5.3.

For clarity, conformity with the Plan does not imply approval or consent for any use of land, water or other resource by regulators or land owners.

# CHAPTER 3- CONFORMITY REQUIREMENTS: ZONING CONDITIONS FOR DEVELOPMENT

---

The Plan provides direction to land owners, regulators and applicants on what land uses are appropriate, where, and under what conditions to achieve the vision and goals identified for the Sahtu Settlement Area. Direction is provided through Conformity Requirements; the rules under which land use may take place. Conformity Requirements, or CRs, are requirements that are to be implemented through authorizations and dispositions.

All land use activities must conform to all Conformity Requirements that are applicable to the location and proposed activities. The granting of dispositions related to the use of land, water or resources must also conform to specific Conformity Requirements that prohibit specified land uses. The implementation of each conformity requirement may vary according to the scale and nature of the land use proposed. Further information on the implementation of Conformity Requirements is provided in Chapter 5 and in the Implementation Guide.

The Plan's direction for land use does not relieve users from obligations to comply with laws of general application or with requirements set by regulators in the process of authorizing land uses. Activities related to legacy land uses are exempted from CRs#1, 16 and 18, but are subject to other CRs in accordance with S. 2.5 D of the Plan.

## 3.1 SPATIAL APPLICATION OF CONFORMITY REQUIREMENTS

Conformity Requirements consist of land use zones and conditions for development. CR#1 establishes a zoning system for the SSA, which applies everywhere in the SSA that the Plan applies. Zones identify where key land uses may and may not take place, and provides a spatial framework for managing different values and competing interests through the conditions that are applied to those zones. Different CRs apply to different zone types as shown in Table 1, and specifically in Table 3.

General CRs are applicable in all zones within the Plan area. Special Management CRs are only applicable to Special Management Zones (SMZ), and to Conservation Zones (CZ) and Proposed Conservation Initiatives (PCI) for uses that are permitted in those zones (either because they are not prohibited, or they are exempted as per S. 2.5). Some Special Management CRs are only applicable to specific zones. These are identified in Table 3, in the CR description and in Appendix 1 Zone Descriptions. Special Management CRs do not apply in General Use Zones.

**Table 1. Application of Conformity Requirements to Zone Types**

<b>Applicable Conformity Requirements</b>	<b>GUZ</b>	<b>SMZ</b>	<b>CZ/PCI</b>
General Conformity Requirements	√	√	√
Special Management Conformity Requirements		√	√

## 3.2 INTRODUCTION TO LAND USE ZONING

Land use zones, established through CR #1, provide flexibility to land and resource management by allowing different rules to be applied to different areas according to need. This plan establishes four types of land use zones, and recognized Established Protected Areas.

General Use Zones (GUZ) allow all land use except bulk water removal, subject to the general CRs outlined in this Plan.

Special Management Zones (SMZ) allow all types of land use other than bulk water removal, subject to the general CRs and applicable special management CRs outlined in this Plan. Special management CRs may differ between special management zones; some are limited in application to specified zones.

Conservation Zones (CZ) are significant traditional, cultural, heritage and ecological areas in which specified land uses are prohibited. Permitted land uses (anything not prohibited, or grandfathered uses) are subject to the general CRs and applicable special management CRs outlined in this Plan.

Proposed Conservation Initiatives (PCI) are areas for which formal legislated protection is being sought through the Protected Areas Strategy, pursuant to commitments under the *SDMCLCA*, or under Parks Canada's legislation. The establishment of a protected area is the intended use of PCIs and is permitted. PCIs have the same status as Conservation Zones in the Plan until they are protected under other legislation. Section 2.2 of the Plan describes the application of the Plan during the establishment of PCIs, and following the establishment of legislated protected areas.

Established Protected Areas (EPA) is the designation given to all legislated protected areas once they are fully established. Once an area is designated as an Established Protected Area, the Plan no longer provides direction to these areas. Instead, they are managed according to their sponsoring legislation and management plans (where applicable). As such, EPAs are treated separately than the four zone types in the rest of the Plan.

The land use zones were established through extensive consultations with communities and gradually refined based on available information and consultation with other planning partners. Each of the zone types serves a purpose. General Use Zones are the economic engines of the region, promoting sustainable development, generating revenues and providing jobs. Special Management Zones share the same purpose, while also protecting the cultural and ecological values of these zones. Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives protect the areas most important to communities for future generations, contribute to ecological representation goals and may provide locations for the establishment of ecological benchmarks for the long-term maintenance and monitoring of ecological integrity.<sup>21</sup>

Table 2 provides a summary of zone allocations for the Sahtu Settlement Area.

---

<sup>21</sup> Submission on Ecological Benchmarks by PAS Science Team, dated Mar 12/08

**Table 2. Overview of Land Use Zones**

<b>Zone Type</b>	<b># of Zones</b>	<b>% of SSA</b>	<b>Total Area (km<sup>2</sup>)</b>
General Use Zones	Not Numbered	30.85	87,618
Special Management Zones	20	47.49	134,855
Conservation Zones	42	10.70	30,384
Proposed Conservation Initiatives	4	8.84	25,115
Established Protected Areas	(1)	1.97	5,608
Community Boundaries	(5)	0.14	409
<b>Total</b>	<b>66 Zones</b>	<b>100.0</b>	<b>283,988</b>

### 3.3 GENERAL CONFORMITY REQUIREMENTS

**General CRs apply throughout the Sahtu Settlement Area.**

#### CR #1- Land Use Zoning

- 1) *Land must be used in accordance with the land use zones shown in Map 2 and Table 3. The zone types consist of General Use Zones, Special Management Zones, Conservation Zones, Proposed Conservation Initiatives and Established Protected Areas. Map 2 and Appendix 1 Zone Descriptions identify the location of each zone. Bulk water removal is a prohibited land use in all zone types. The prohibited land uses in Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives are mineral exploration and development, oil and gas exploration and development, quarrying, power development, and commercial forestry. Established Protected Areas are exempt from the Plan's other CRs; they are managed according to the legislation under which they are established and any applicable management plans. Any land use not prohibited in a zone is permitted, subject to the conditions of this Plan.*
- 2) *Despite the land use prohibitions that apply in Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives, quarrying, transportation and infrastructure development that would be prohibited, or any water use other than a bulk water removal that would be prohibited is permitted in such zones if and to the extent that it is demonstrated that:*
  - a) *such activity is necessary in order to carry out a permitted land use outside the zone, and the user will be authorized to conduct the land use outside the zone (for example, subject to other applicable Plan conditions, water may be taken from a Conservation Zone to the extent necessary to carry out authorized oil and gas activities in a Special Management Zone or General Use Zone, and a pipeline and related infrastructure may be built in a Conservation Zone in order to transport hydrocarbons lawfully produced in a Special Management Zone or General Use Zone, or to connect authorized pipelines in other zones);*
  - b) *no feasible alternative to carrying out the activity in the Conservation Zone or Proposed Conservation Initiative exists;*
  - c) *the activity avoids significant ecological and cultural areas as identified in the Zone Descriptions, Background Report or by community organizations; and*

- d) *its design, construction, operation and maintenance minimize any foreseeable adverse impacts on the ecological and cultural values identified for the zone, including subsistence use, either by avoiding such impacts or mitigating them to the extent possible.*

### **Interpretation**

Where a land use is prohibited, no surface or subsurface dispositions in land, water or resources associated with the prohibited land use may be granted or disposed of, including but not limited to: timber cutting licences, timber cutting permits, prospecting permits, mineral claims, mineral leases, exploration licences, significant discovery licences, production licences, permits or leases under the *Territorial Quarrying Regulations*, surface leases, or equivalent interest in land granted by a district land corporation, unless these are associated with a right existing on the day the Plan is approved.

A description and mapping for each zone is provided in Appendix 1. A definition for each of the prohibited uses follows. Additional context and guidance related to the implementation of this CR is provided in the Implementation Guide.

### Bulk Water Removal

Protection of water is one of the most important issues for communities and residents. Canada is the largest single owner of fresh water resources in the world. Many Canadians are concerned about the bulk removal of water from major drainage basins, such as the Great Bear Lake and the Mackenzie River. Canada's Federal Water Policy (1987) states that Canada will "take all possible measures within the limits of its constitutional authority to prohibit the export of Canadian water by interbasin diversions, and strengthen federal legislation to the extent necessary to fully implement this policy." In 2003, AANDC developed a policy prohibiting the permanent out-of basin transfer of bulk water from major drainage basins in the NWT, such as the Mackenzie River. CR#1 supports, and is consistent with this policy. For clarity, the Plan's prohibition on bulk water removal does not prohibit the use of water for other uses, including consumption, travel, road building, oil and gas or mineral exploration and development activities, or hydro-electricity generation.

### Mineral Exploration and Development

Mineral exploration and development includes prospecting for minerals, staking a claim, surveying, removal or processing of a mineral, developing or operating a mine, and any work required within the meaning of the *Northwest Territories and Nunavut Mining Regulations*, except government funded geological research for the purpose of determining the geological potential of the area. This includes work done in constructing and operating roads or airstrips to provide access to mineral exploration or mineral development sites.

For clarity, the prohibition on mineral exploration and development within Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives extends to transportation of minerals, but access across Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives to carry out permitted uses in other zones is managed through CR #1, S.2.

### Oil and Gas Exploration and Development

Oil and gas exploration and development means any land or water based activities involved in the exploration and drilling for and the production, conservation, processing and transportation

of oil and gas within the meaning of the *Canada Oil and Gas Operations Act* and its regulations, but does not include government funded geological research for the purpose of determining the geological potential of the region.

For clarity, the prohibition on oil and gas exploration and development within Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives extends to the transportation of oil and gas, but access across Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives to carry out permitted uses in other zones is managed through CR #1, S.2.

#### Power Development

Power development means the construction of infrastructure, equipment or facilities outside of community boundaries to harvest or generate electricity in excess of one hundred kilowatts (100 KW)<sup>22</sup>, whether from diesel, gas, water, wind, solar, thermal or biomass energy.

#### Commercial Forestry

Commercial Forestry means the commercial harvesting of trees within the meaning of Chapter 14 of the *SDMCLCA*. For clarity, it does not include participants' right to harvest trees for the purposes set out in S. 14.1.2 of the *SDMCLCA*.

#### Quarrying

Quarrying means the extraction of limestone, granite, slate, marble, gypsum, loam, marl, gravel, sand, clay, volcanic ash or stone as described in the *Territorial Quarrying Regulations*.

#### Transportation Corridor and Infrastructure Development

Transportation corridor and infrastructure development means the construction, maintenance and operation of roads, railways, pipelines, electrical transmission lines, communications cables and towers, navigational aids, barge landings, airstrips, fuel caches, storage buildings and other similar works or structures.

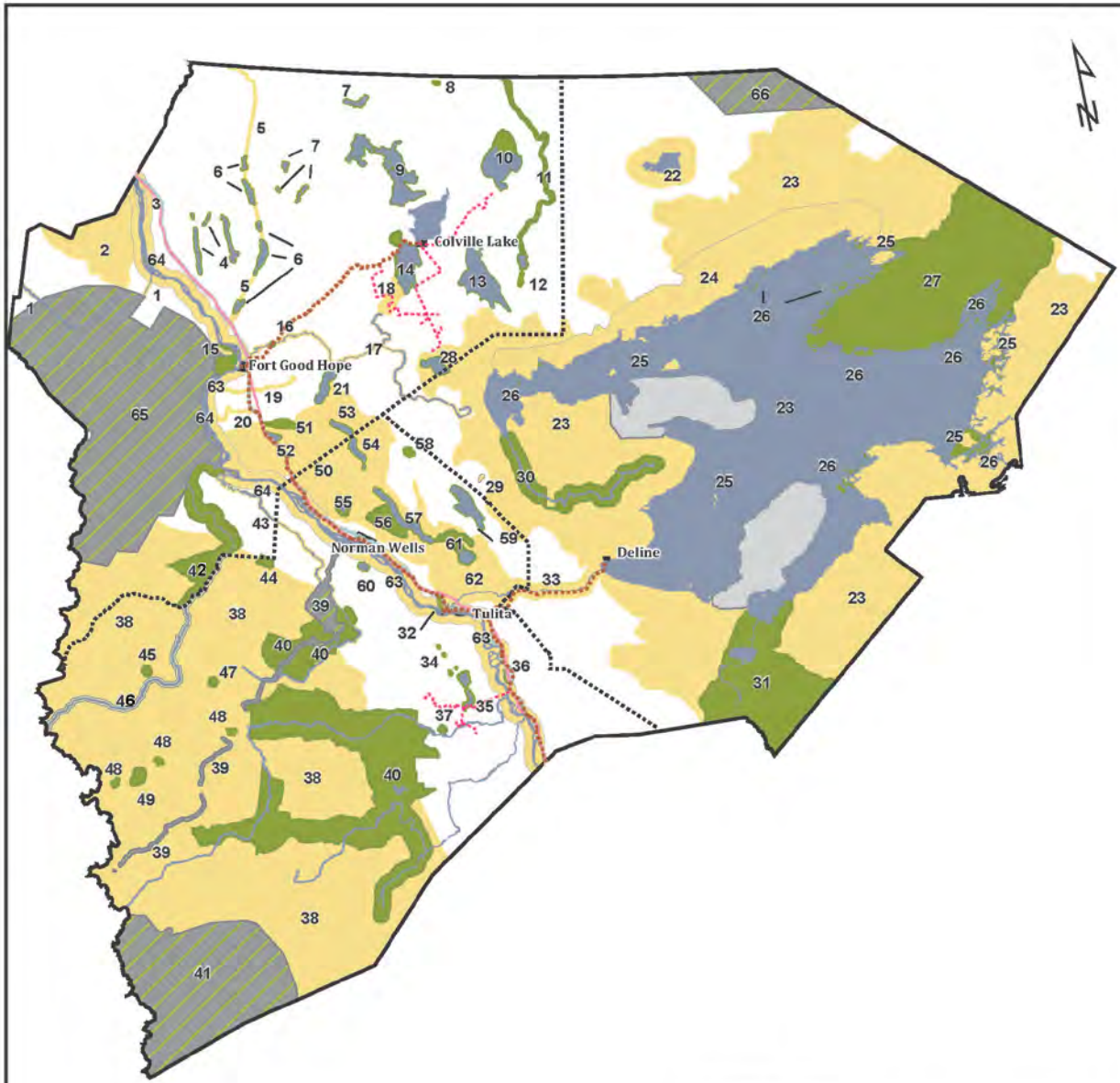
---

<sup>22</sup> This minimum threshold is sufficient to exclude micro-generation of electricity by cabin owners or small scale tourism establishments for their own use. Personal communication, Wade Carpenter, Alternative Energy Specialist, GNWT, May 7/10



# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 2: Land Use Zones



\* For Map References please consult the Appendix



**Table 3. Zone Prohibitions and Applicable Conditions**

Zone #	Zone Name	Zone Type	Area (Sq. Km)*	% of SSA	Prohibited Uses						Conditions							
					Bulk Water Removal	Mining E&D	O&G E&D	Power Dev't	Forestry	Quarrying	CRs #2-13	CR #14	CR #15	CR #16	CR #17	CR #18	CR #19	
	<b>General Use Zones</b>	<b>GUZ</b>	<b>87,618</b>	<b>30.85</b>	<b>X</b>							✓						
1	Besla Niline (Ontaratue River)	SMZ	66	0.02	X							✓	✓					
2	Óhdarah Tué (Marion Lakes)	SMZ	1,766	0.62	X							✓	✓					
3	Shigago (Little Chicago)	SMZ	116	0.04	X							✓	✓					
4	Travaillant Uplands	CZ	187	0.07	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
5	Sihoniłıne ʔehtene (Loon River to Fort Anderson Trail)	SMZ	329	0.12	X							✓	✓					
6	Fort Anderson Trail Lakes	CZ	218	0.08	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
7	Colville Upland Lakes	CZ	113	0.04	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
8	Bela Nera Dele (Where the Wolf Crosses)	CZ	3	0.00	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
9	Tué Sho & Dunedelatue (Aubrey Lake & Dunedelatue Lake)	CZ	665	0.23	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
10	Ayonikı (Maunoir Dome)	CZ	552	0.19	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
11	Sihoniłıne (Anderson River)	CZ	415	0.15	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
12	Dene Di Gon'e	CZ	12	0.00	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
13	Tashın Tué (Lac Des Bois)	CZ	529	0.19	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
14	Nilın Tué (Lac Belot)	CZ	415	0.15	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					✓
15	Fossil Lake	CZ	184	0.06	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
16	Ne'Rahten	CZ	7	0.00	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
17	Hare Indian River	SMZ	495	0.17	X							✓	✓					
18	Neyádalın (Underground River)	SMZ	309	0.11	X							✓	✓					
19	Bluefish Creek to Tsintu River	SMZ	120	0.04	X							✓	✓					
20	Snafu Creek	SMZ	75	0.03	X							✓	✓					
21	Nıfıee K'ıdah Tué (Lac a Jacques)	CZ	123	0.04	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
22	Arakıe Tué (Horton Lake)	SMZ	1,178	0.41	X							✓	✓					
23	Sahtu (Great Bear Lake Watershed)	SMZ	68,824	24.23	X							✓		✓	✓	✓		
24	Neregah (Northshore)	SMZ	5,913	2.08	X							✓		✓	✓			
25	Du K'ets'edı SMZ (Sentinel Islands SMZ)	SMZ	325	0.11	X							✓		✓	✓			
26	Du K'ets'edı CZ (Sentinel Islands CZ)	CZ	251	0.09	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓
27	Eda la (Caribou Point)	CZ	8,775	3.09	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓	✓	✓			
28	Turatlın Tué (Tunago Lake)	CZ	119	0.04	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
29	Clement Lake	SMZ	6	0.00	X							✓	✓					
30	Luchaniline (Whitefish River)	CZ	1,443	0.51	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓	✓	✓			
31	Tehkaicho Dé (Johnny Hoe River)	CZ	4,141	1.46	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓	✓	✓			
32	Petınırzah (Bear Rock)	CZ	33	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
33	Sahtu Deh (Great Bear River)	SMZ	908	0.32	X							✓	✓					

Zone #	Zone Name	Zone Type	Area (Sq. Km)*	% of SSA	Prohibited Uses						Conditions						
					Bulk Water Removal	Mining E&D	O&G E&D	Power Dev't	Forestry	Quarrying	CRs #2-13	CR #14	CR #15	CR #16	CR #17	CR #18	CR #19
34	Mackay, Rusty and Yellow Lakes	CZ	18	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
35	Táhlue Tué & Táshin Tué (Stewart and Tate Lakes)	CZ	121	0.04	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					✓
36	Mio Lake	CZ	19	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
37	Tłı Dehdele Dıdlı (Red Dog Mountain)	CZ	27	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
38	Mackenzie Mountains	SMZ	40,029	14.10	X						✓	✓					
39	Do Et'Q (Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail Reserve)	PCI	939	0.33	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
40	Shúhtagot'ine Néné (Mountain Dene Land)	CZ	8,982	3.16	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
41	Náats'Inch'oh	PCI	7,604	2.68	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
42	Farfa Niljne (Mountain River Extension)	CZ	1,348	0.47	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
43	Carcajou River	SMZ	383	0.13	X						✓	✓					
44	Florence Lake	CZ	57	0.02	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
45	Palmer Lake	CZ	34	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
46	K'ááchohtıı deé (Mountain River)	SMZ	446	0.16	X						✓	✓					
47	Cache Lake	CZ	32	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
48	Tuésene (Mountain Hot Springs)	CZ	75	0.03	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
49	Mirage Mountain	CZ	92	0.03	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
50	Norman Range	SMZ	6,095	2.15	X						✓	✓					
51	Yamıga Fee (Yomoga Rock)	CZ	92	0.03	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
52	Chick Lake	CZ	36	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
53	Sam McCrae Lake	CZ	59	0.02	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
54	Turton Lake	CZ	79	0.03	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
55	Datzımı Tué (Oscar Lake)	CZ	70	0.02	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
56	Kelly Lake Protected Area (Land Claim)	CZ	273	0.10	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
57	Lugedegil Tué & Tuyehıla Tué (Kelly and Lennie Lake)	CZ	205	0.07	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
58	Doctor Lake	CZ	21	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
59	Tuwi Tué (Mahoney Lake)	CZ	232	0.08	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
60	Three Day Lake	CZ	32	0.01	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
61	K'áálo Tué CZ (Willow Lake CZ)	CZ	245	0.09	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					
62	K'áálo Tué SMZ (Willow Lake Wetlands SMZ)	SMZ	1,348	0.47	X						✓	✓					
63	Deh Cho (Mackenzie River)	SMZ	6,122	2.16	X						✓	✓					
64	Mackenzie River Islands	CZ	50	0.02	X	X	X	X	X	X	✓	✓					



## CR #2 - Community Engagement and Traditional Knowledge

- 1) *For all land use activities, community organizations and potentially affected community members must be adequately engaged with respect to:*
  - a) *The proposed activities,*
  - b) *Specific locations and issues of concern, including important heritage resources, and*
  - c) *Traditional knowledge that is relevant to the location, scope and nature of the proposed activities.*
- 2) *The proposed activities must be designed and carried out with due regard for community concerns, and incorporate relevant traditional knowledge.*

### **Interpretation**

- “Due regard” implies careful consideration, not automatic compliance with community requests. Applicants are expected to exercise reasonable judgment. If community concerns cannot be addressed (e.g. conflict with physical constraints or conflicting direction from community organizations and other bodies), then a clear explanation and rationale should be provided. The Board encourages the applicant to raise any constraints with the communities directly to jointly identify solutions. The Board gives equal consideration to relevant community traditional knowledge and modern science and expects applicants to do the same.
- “Adequately engaged” requires communication between the applicant and organizations within affected communities to determine what level and nature of engagement is appropriate for the proposed land use activity. It reflects that it is not always the scale of activity, but location or potential for impacts that is the source of concern. It also allows the flexibility to determine that further engagement is not required in situations where an activity is being extended or renewed with no change, or where minor amendments may trigger further engagement requirements that are not warranted or desired. Similarly, “adequate” provides flexibility for the applicant to work with the community to determine what TK might be needed for the proposed activity.

The communities of Fort Good Hope and Colville Lake place a strong emphasis on community engagement for land use activities occurring within the Fort Good Hope-Colville Lake Group Trapping Area (covers the entire K’asho Got’ine District). It is their traditional territory, and they expect to be engaged on all land use activities occurring within this area. Deline has similar expectations for land use activities occurring within the Great Bear Lake Watershed. Applicants are advised to pay special attention to these interests when engaging communities about proposed land use activities in these areas.

## CR #3 - Community Benefits

*All applications for land use must demonstrate how residents and communities will benefit from the proposed land use. In the absence of any definable benefits to residents or communities, benefits to the broader public interest will be considered.*

### **Interpretation**

The intent and priority is for residents and communities to benefit from land use activities. Land use activities must contribute to the social, cultural and economic well-being of residents and communities, as per the guiding principles outlined in S. 25.2.4 of the SDMCLCA and S. 35 of the MVRMA and applicants are encouraged to work with relevant community organizations and businesses to maximize the benefits to communities, businesses and residents from proposed land uses. This CR is intended to be complementary, and not duplicative, of benefits already required as part of regulatory and governmental decision-making.

Benefits for residents and communities are not limited solely to financial benefits. They may include:

- Economic benefits (Examples of economic benefits instruments include Benefits Plans<sup>23</sup> required for oil and gas operations submitted to the Minister of AANDC pursuant to the Canada Oil and Gas Operation Act (*COGOA*), Access Agreements for access to Sahtu Settlement Lands; privately negotiated Access and Benefits Agreements, and impact Benefits Agreements negotiated between mining applicants and affected communities for major projects as a best practice);
- Training, and capacity building;
- Infrastructure development or improvement;
- Early and continuous community involvement in project design, operations and decisions (the more collaborative the better);
- Carrying out TK studies and documenting Elders knowledge for archival purposes;
- Community involvement in monitoring and inspections;
- Creating new information of interest to the community;
- Developing initiatives to promote culture, language or on the land activities; and
- Providing culturally sensitive workplace policies (e.g. leave policies that respect local and cultural priorities such as attending funerals for non-blood relatives, on-the-land leave).

Benefits in the broader public interest may include such things as the creation of new data/information, infrastructure development or improvement, revenues, etc.

---

<sup>23</sup> The Canada Oil and Gas Operations Act (*COGOA*) requires that, "no authorization of any [oil and gas operation] work or activity shall be issued...until the Minister has approved, or waived the requirement of approval of, a benefits plan in respect of the work or activity." The NEB does not see the contents of the Benefits Plan.

## CR #4 - Archaeological Sites and Burial Sites

- 1) *Land use activities must not be located within 500m of known or suspected burial sites, or within 150m of known or suspected archaeological sites, unless measures are developed in cooperation with the Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre, affected communities, or in the case of burial sites, with affected families where possible, to fully mitigate all impacts to the site.*
- 2) *In areas where there is a high risk of impact to known or suspected archaeological sites, as determined by the PWNHC, an archaeological impact assessment must be conducted prior to commencement of the land use activity.*

### **Interpretation**

"Known or suspected sites" means archaeological sites registered in the NWT Archaeological Sites Database, or identified by the PWNHC during project review, or identified by community members during public engagement and through traditional knowledge.

## CR #5 - Watershed Management

*For water licenses and land use permits, the Land and Water Boards will ensure that, subject to Chapter 20 of the Sahtu Dene and Metis Comprehensive Land Claim Agreement<sup>24</sup>, the proposed land use activity:*

- a) *does not substantially alter quality, quantity, or rate of flow for waters that flow on, through, or are adjacent to Sahtu Lands, and*
- b) *is subject to mitigation measures to minimize potential impacts on surface and groundwater that flow into CZs, SMZs, or PCI.*

## CR #6 – Drinking Water

- 1) *Any land use activity that would result in the contamination of surface or groundwater within community catchments is prohibited.*
- 2) *Where there is reasonable potential for any land use activity to affect a downstream drinking water source:*
  - a. *the affected community must be informed and engaged with respect to potential impacts, the design of mitigation measures and monitoring programs;*
  - b. *baseline water quality data must be collected from the drinking water source prior to the start of any activity; and*
  - c. *regular water quality testing of the source watershed must be conducted to monitor potential impacts.*

### **Interpretation**

"Contamination" means the potential for the effluent from a proposed land use activity to render a downstream community's drinking water source unsafe for that purpose.

---

<sup>24</sup> This CR is subject to 20.1.15 and 20.1.16 of the *SDMCLCA*.



## CR #7 – Fish and Wildlife

1) Land use activities must be designed using the most current information for identified species of interest and species at risk as obtained from ENR, CWS, DFO, PCA, the SRRB and the local Renewable Resource Councils.

2) Impacts to wildlife, their habitat and migration patterns, and important community harvesting areas must be prevented or mitigated to the extent possible.

- a. In particular, all reasonable steps should be taken to follow the horizontal setbacks and minimum flight altitudes identified in Table 4 when near habitat sites during sensitive periods described in that table, unless human safety is of concern, and measures are developed with the appropriate organizations and the RRC to mitigate impacts to these species and their habitat.
- b. In addition, DFO has established in-water construction timing windows for the protection of fish and fish habitat. These are updated from time to time and are available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/regions/central/habitat/os-ee/provinces-territoires-territoires/nt/os-ee21-eng.htm>. During these periods, no in-water or shoreline work is allowed except under site- or project-specific review and with the implementation of protective measures.
- c. Barren-ground caribou and woodland caribou are especially important to communities and have been shown to be sensitive to disturbance. Map 3 shows important rutting and wintering habitat for barren-ground caribou (Oct 8-Mar31), boreal and mountain woodland caribou range, and the summer habitat of the South Nahanni Herd of Mountain Woodland Caribou. All land use activities occurring in these areas during the specified times are required to address impacts to caribou and their habitat.

### Interpretation

“Species of Interest” means species identified by wildlife managers or by community organizations (and particularly the RRCs) during engagement activities, which may be affected by the proposed land use.

- Species of interest identified by communities during Plan development are: fish, furbearers, waterfowl, raptors, barren-ground caribou, mountain and boreal woodland caribou, moose, muskox, mountain goats, Dall’s Sheep, grizzly bears and black bears. Communities will be able to identify particular species to focus on for a proposed land use, geographical area and timing of activities during community engagement.
- Applicants should address impacts to those species that are expected to be present within the area of activity during the expected season of operation, or whose habitat sites may be directly affected whether the wildlife is present or not (e.g. a den or nest) where the species is known to re-use such sites annually.
- Wildlife managers should be consulted about the presence of COSEWIC or SARA-listed species and any special management requirements for them.

“Community Harvesting Areas” are areas identified by communities during engagement activities for that purpose, or areas identified in the zone descriptions or in the Background Report as important sites for community harvesting (e.g. fish lakes, trapping or hunting areas). Communities are particularly concerned about impacts within the Fort Good Hope-Colville Lake

Group Trapping Area (which includes the entire K'asho Got'ine District within the Sahtu Settlement Area) and to Special Harvesting Areas established through the SDMCLCA (a map of these areas is provided in the Background Report). Applicants are advised to give special attention to these areas in their community engagement activities and applications when proposing land use activities in or near these sites.

**Table 4. Wildlife Setbacks, Minimum Altitude and Sensitive Periods<sup>25</sup>**

<b>Species/Group</b>	<b>Habitat Type</b>	<b>Period</b>	<b>Horizontal Setback</b>	<b>Minimum Altitude<sup>26</sup></b>
<b>Black &amp; grizzly bear</b>	Dens	15 Oct - 15 May	800 m	300 m
<b>Wolverine</b>	Dens	15 Oct - 15 May	800 m	300 m
<b>Wolf</b>	Dens	1 May - 15 Sep	800 m <sup>27</sup>	300 m
<b>Dall's sheep</b>	Lambing areas	01 May - 15 Jun	2000 m <sup>28</sup>	300 m
<b>Mountain goat</b>	Kidding areas	15 May – 30 Jun	2000 m <sup>29</sup>	300 m
<b>Raptors</b>	Nest sites	1 Mar - 1 Aug	1000 m	650 m
<b>Raptors</b>	Nest sites	2 Aug - 28 Feb	500 m	650 m
<b>Waterfowl</b>	Nest sites	01 Jun - 31 Aug	250 m	650 m
<b>Waterfowl</b>	Staging Areas / Concentrations <sup>30</sup>	10 May – 20 Jun 15 Aug – 30 Sep	250 m	650m altitude, 1500 m lateral distance
<b>Waterfowl</b>	Concentrations	Year Round		650 m

<sup>25</sup> Information provided by GNWT. Minimum altitudes came from DRWED/WMAC(NWT) other than bottom two rows (provided by CWS) [http://www.screeningcommittee.ca/screening/operating\\_guidelines.html](http://www.screeningcommittee.ca/screening/operating_guidelines.html).

<sup>26</sup> Transport Canada regulations stipulate that aircraft may not fly lower than 1000 feet (304 metres) above ground.

<sup>27</sup> Dean Cluff, GNWT, personal communication.

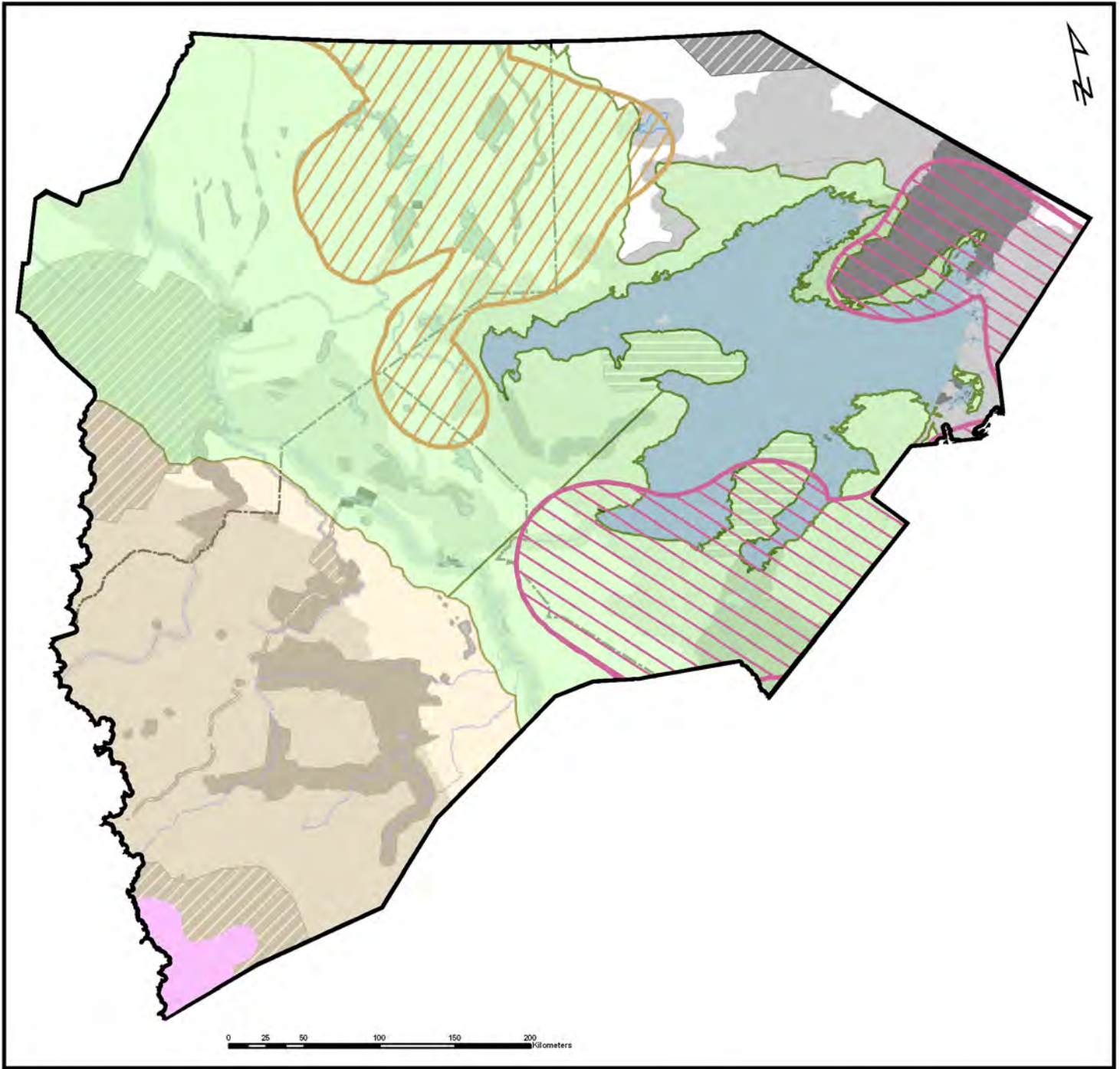
<sup>28</sup> Cote, S. 1996. Mountain goat responses to helicopter disturbance. Wildlife Society Bulletin 24: 681-685

<sup>29</sup> Richard Popko, Supervisor, Wildlife Management, ENR Sahtu Region, GNWT. Personal Communication, December 14, 2012.

<sup>30</sup> CWS has identified key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites within the Sahtu Settlement Area that are known areas of waterfowl concentrations. Waterfowl may concentrate in other areas from time to time as identified by CWS, to which these seasonal restrictions would be expected to apply.

# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 3: Barren-Ground Caribou and Woodland Caribou Range



- |   |   |  |                                   |
|---|---|--|-----------------------------------|
|  | Mountain Woodland Caribou - South Nahanni Herd (Summer Habitat) |  | Community Boundary                |
|  | Boreal Woodland Caribou Range                                   |  | Conservation Zones                |
|  | Mountain Woodland Caribou Range                                 |  | Established Protected Areas       |
| <b>Barren Ground Caribou Fall-Winter Range</b>                                      |   |  | Proposed Conservation Initiatives |
|  | Bluenose West Caribou Range                                     |  | Special Management Zones          |
|  | Bluenose East Caribou Range                                     |  | General Use Zones                 |

\* For Map References please consult the Appendix

## CR #8 - Species Introductions

*Land use activities must not result in the intentional introduction of non-native plant and animal species, or of domestic animal species or subspecies, except by special approval by the appropriate authority. All reasonable precautions must be taken to prevent the introduction of non-native species or sub-species.*

### Interpretation

"Domestic species or subspecies" means a species or subspecies of vertebrates that has been domesticated by humans so as to live and breed in a tame condition and depend on humankind for survival.<sup>31</sup>

## CR #9 - Sensitive Species and Features

- 1) *Any land use activity requiring a land use permit or water licence must be designed using the most current available information on the location of rare or may-be-at-risk plants, hot and warm springs, mineral licks, karst topography, amphibian sightings, and ice patches and carried out in a manner that minimizes impacts to these features.*
- 2) *Specifically, land use activities:*
  - a) *must not take place within 1000 m of any known mineral lick, unless the activity cannot feasibly meet this requirement, and it can be demonstrated that alternative mitigation measures will protect the lick.*
  - b) *that are situated within the boundary of glacial refugia or within 500 m of known hot or warm spring(s), and have the potential to impact rare or may-be at risk plants shall require a plant survey. Any rare or may-be-at-risk plants found in the survey shall be monitored for impacts from the activity.*
  - c) *situated within the area of ice patches identified in Map 4 must contact the PWNHC ([archaeology@gov.nt.ca](mailto:archaeology@gov.nt.ca)) to determine if any ice patches are in the vicinity of the activity. Activities must not take place within 150 m of the edge of ice patches unless authorized by the PWNHC.*
- 3) *The location of any hot or warm spring or mineral lick discovered while carrying out an authorized activity must be reported to [nwt\\_pas@gov.nt.ca](mailto:nwt_pas@gov.nt.ca), and any amphibian sightings to [nwtsoer@gov.nt.ca](mailto:nwtsoer@gov.nt.ca).*

### Interpretation

"karst topography" is landscape found on carbonate bedrock (limestone, dolomite, marble) with closed surface depressions, well-developed underground drainage systems, including disappearing streams, springs and sinkholes.

---

<sup>31</sup> From National Parks of Canada Domestic Animals Regulations, SOR/98-177

“Rare or may-be at risk plants” are defined by the PAS Science Team.<sup>32</sup> Plants labelled as ‘rare’ by the PAS Science Team, working with the ENR Wildlife Biologist (Biodiversity), are endemic to the NWT and are thus globally rare; no rare plants exist within the SSA. May-be at risk plants are extremely rare, at least regionally, but have not yet been assessed by COSEWIC (the Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada); there are 70 locations of may-be at risk plants within the SSA.<sup>33</sup> A current list of rare or may-be at risk plants are provided with a broader description in the Background Report.

“Hot and warm springs” are defined by the PAS Science Team as those having a water temperature of at least 10°C.

Map 4 shows the current known locations of sensitive species and features as discussed above. Some data is generalized (mineral licks, ice patches) as the specific locations are kept confidential, and applicants must seek the data specifically from the data holders. Additional information about these features is available from the NWT Protected Areas Strategy<sup>34</sup>, and in the Background Report. Further implementation guidance, including where to access the most up-to-date data, is provided in the Implementation Guide.

---

<sup>32</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/science-rareplants.asp> or contact [nwtsoer@gov.nt.ca](mailto:nwtsoer@gov.nt.ca).

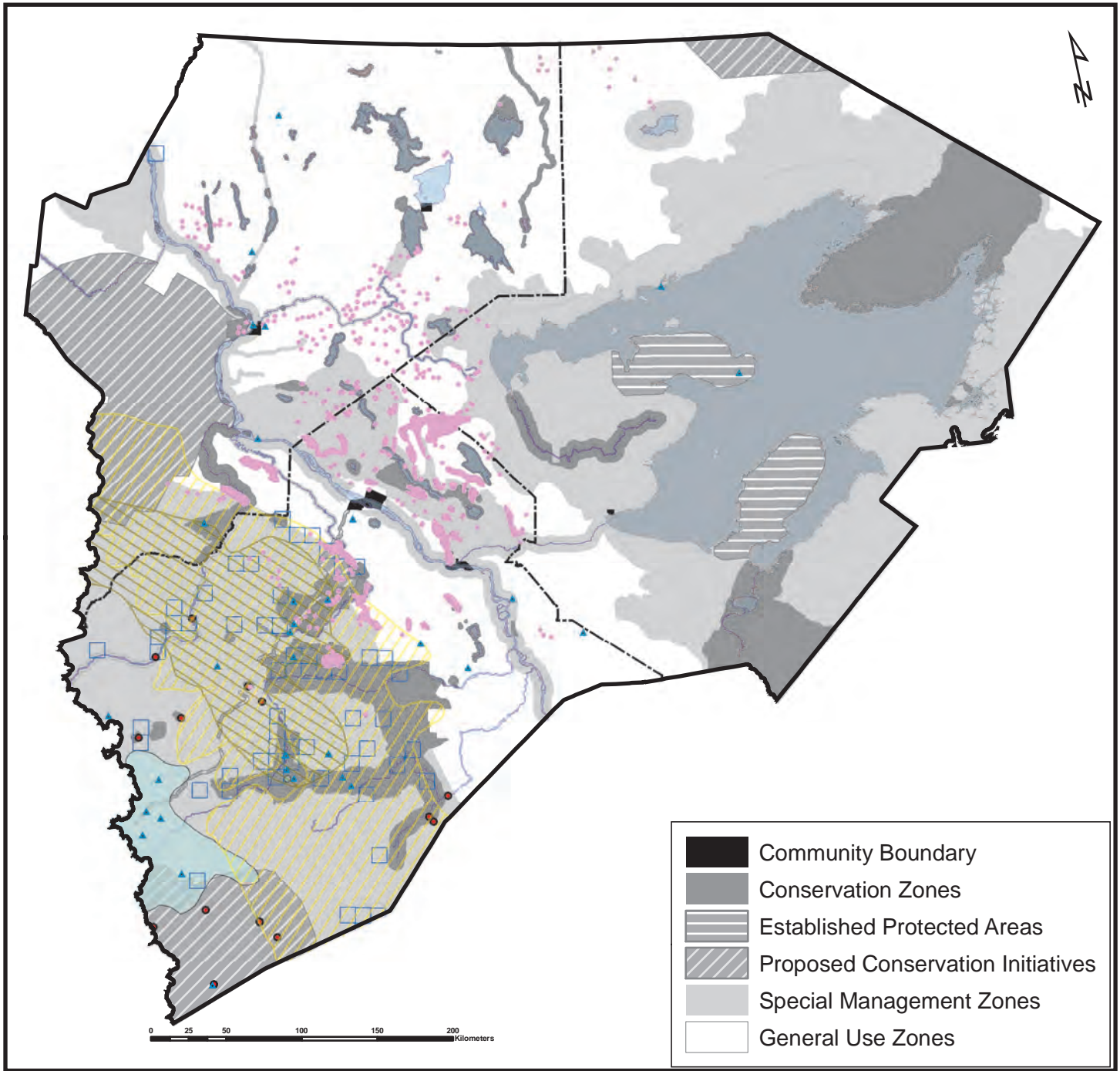
<sup>33</sup> Ecological Representation Analysis of Conservation Zones/Protected Areas Initiatives in the April 30, 2009 draft Sahtu Land Use Plan, Protected Areas Strategy Science Team, August 6/09

<sup>34</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/science-specialfeatures.asp>



# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 4: Sensitive Species and Features



\* For Map References please consult the Appendix



## **CR #10 - Permafrost**

*Any land use activity requiring a land use permit or water licence must be designed and carried out in a manner that prevents and/or mitigates adverse environmental impacts resulting from the degradation or aggradation of permafrost.*

## **CR #11 - Project-Specific Monitoring**

*Any land use activity requiring a land use permit or water licence must include site-specific monitoring, that is sufficient to monitor the effectiveness of the activity's proposed mitigation measures and any impacts to the values in the surrounding area, as defined in the Plan's Background Report, zone descriptions and in discussions with communities.*

## **CR #12 - Financial Security**

*When Required by a land use permit or water licence issued by the Land and Water Board, financial security must be posted and maintained with the Minister of Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development. The Land and Water Board will ensure that closure and reclamation plans are in accordance with legislation and regulation.*

### **Application**

- This CR is only applicable to land use permits and water licences.
- Activities proposed by a municipal, territorial, or federal government are exempt.

## **CR #13 - Closure and Reclamation**

*All applications for land use must include consideration of closure and reclamation and where appropriate, plans shall be developed in consultation with community organisations.*

## 3.4 SPECIAL MANAGEMENT CONFORMITY REQUIREMENTS

**The following CRs have limited application. They only apply to the specific zones indicated for each. They do not apply within General Use Zones.**

### CR #14 – Protection of Special Values

*Any land use activity proposed within a Special Management Zone, Conservation Zone or Proposed Conservation Initiative must be designed and carried out in a manner that protects, respects or takes into account the values of the zone as directed in the Plan's Zone Descriptions.*

**Applicable Zones:** All SMZs, CZs and PCIs except Zones 23-27, 30 and 31

#### Interpretation

- "Protect" means the feature and its value are completely unaffected by the activity.
- "Respect" means the core element of the feature/site and its value are substantially unaffected by the activity. "Respect" recognizes that there will inevitably be some impact on the feature/site but that it will fundamentally continue to exist with the same values during the activity and after the activity ends.
- "Take into account" means that a genuine and reasonable attempt must be made to plan and operate around the feature/site and to respect the values attached to it, but if the feature/site or its value is harmed by the activity despite reasonable efforts, that is acceptable.

### CR #15 – The Great Bear Lake Watershed

*Regulators shall ensure that:*

- (a) Applicants proposing land use activities in the Great Bear Lake Watershed engage Deline Community organizations in order to understand the cultural and environmental values set out in the Water Heart- the Great Bear Lake Watershed Plan;*
- (b) Any land use activities permitted in the watershed are consistent with the maintenance of the area as a self-sustaining ecosystems; and*
- (c) Any land use activity requiring a land use permit or water licence includes a site specific monitoring program consistent with CR # 11.*

**Applicable Zones:** Only applies to Zones 23-27, 30, and 31

## CR #16 - Fish Farming and Aquaculture

*Fish farming and aquaculture are prohibited within the portion of the Great Bear Lake Watershed located in the Sahtu Settlement Area.*

**Applicable Zones:** Only applies to Zones 23-27, 30 and 31.

### Interpretation

"Aquaculture" means the farming of aquatic organisms (fish, shellfish and aquatic plants) in marine or fresh water.<sup>35</sup>

"Fish farming" means raising fish commercially in tanks or enclosures, usually for food.<sup>36</sup> Fish farming is a form of aquaculture.

## CR #17 - Disturbance of Lakebed

*A land use activity that would disturb the lakebed of Great Bear Lake is prohibited, except:*

- a) the installation of environmental monitoring equipment;*
- b) the installation of public, private or commercial wharves and docks; and*
- c) the inspection, maintenance, or replacement of community water intake pipelines below the ordinary high-water mark of Great Bear Lake.*

**Applicable Zones:** Only applies to Zone 23 (Great Bear Lake Watershed)

### Interpretation

The use of watercraft and the landing and take off of floatplanes do not constitute a disturbance of the lake bed.

## CR #18 - Uses of Du K'ets'Edi Conservation Zone (Sentinel Islands)

*The authorization of commercial renewable or non-renewable resource development, and the establishment of permanent structures other than the installation, maintenance and repair of research and monitoring equipment, are prohibited in Zone 26 - Du Kets'Edi Conservation Zone (Crown Land portion of Sentinel Islands).*

**Applicable Zones:** Applies only to Zone 26 (Du K'ets'Edi Conservation Zone (Crown lands))

**Interpretation:** Some tourism businesses make temporary stops on the islands with their clients as part of their tours. Such low impact tourism use is consistent with the intended use of these islands and is not prohibited by this CR.

---

<sup>35</sup> Aquaculture Policy Framework, DFO, Oct 28/08, <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/aquaculture/ref/APF-PAM-eng.htm>

<sup>36</sup> <http://www.answers.com/topic/fish-farm>

## CR #19 - Water Withdrawal

*The withdrawal of water for industrial purposes from Lac Belot, Stewart Lake or Tate Lake, except from the outflow, shall not be authorized.*

**Applicable Zones:** Applies only to Zones 14 (Lac Belot) and 35 (Stewart and Tate Lakes)

# CHAPTER 4- ACTIONS AND RECOMENDATIONS

---

## 4.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes Actions and Recommendations identified by the Board that support the Plan's Conformity Requirements and advance important planning issues.

**Actions** are measures directed at various bodies, including Designated Sahtu Organizations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial governments, and co-management boards, to advance planning issues or fill data gaps needed to move the Plan forward during future review cycles. By approving this Plan, the approving Parties agree to make reasonable efforts to complete all Actions pertaining to them. Approval of the plan does not imply a commitment for additional government funding.

Actions are to be implemented outside the regulatory process. For example, the establishment of a working group to study and collaboratively develop a cumulative effects management strategy will require participation and commitment from a variety of planning partners to advance the plan, but this work is not initiated by a particular land use application. Upon completion of the Action, the results may be considered for integration into a future revision of the Sahtu Land Use Plan (e.g. the first 5 year review) as amended or new Conformity Requirements. Other Actions may produce new information or new protocols to support future decision making in planning or regulatory processes.

**Recommendations** support the regulatory process by identifying additional factors or measures for applicants and regulators to consider or act on during project reviews. Recommendations are not legally binding, and approval of this Plan by SSI, the GNWT and Canada does not make the Plan's Recommendations legally binding. They are intended to be advisory only. Applicants and regulators are asked to consider and implement recommendations wherever feasible and appropriate.

Where appropriate, new information or new protocols should be shared with Sahtu Organizations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial Governments, and co-management boards, to advance planning issues or fill data gaps need to move the plan forward during future review cycles.

## 4.2 ACTIONS

### Action #1 - Sahtu Land Use Working Group

*1) The SLUPB will make reasonable efforts to establish and lead a Sahtu Land Use Working Group as a collaborative forum through which to discuss, study and resolve key regional land use issues, and Plan implementation issues.*

*2) The SLUPB will chair the Working Group, which will consist of equal representation from Sahtu aboriginal organizations, and from government, regulators, industry and environmental organizations. Other participants may be invited from time to time to participate as resource*

*people. Quorum requirements will be set to ensure adequate involvement of aboriginal organizations and government in all meetings.*

*3) The SLUPB will hold Working Group meetings as needed, in person or via teleconference to advance key planning issues and identify solutions for consideration in future Plan amendments.*

*4) The Working Group members will collaboratively set priorities, develop annual workplans, and identify sources of funding as needed to advance this work.*<sup>37</sup>

## **Context and Rationale**

Many land use issues can only be resolved through collaborative decision-making, where all who need to be involved in decisions are talking to one another. The Board therefore proposes to set up a Sahtu Land Use Working Group that it will chair, with representation from all relevant planning partners to begin to address the broad land use issues outlined in this section. By chairing and coordinating the working group, the Board can ensure that progress is made on key issues required to advance the Plan and prepare for 5-year reviews. Partners in the working group will be expected to bring information, their expertise, and a collaborative spirit to work together to resolve land use issues.

The Working Group will allow for better communication and coordination between communities and organizations involved in land use in the region, improve relationships and access to relevant information, and provide for adaptive learning and management within the Sahtu Settlement Area.

During Plan development, a number of items were identified for the Working Group to advance. Many of these started out as discrete Actions in the Plan, and were moved to the Working Group for further discussion and refinement. While the Working Group will be free to address any issues it deems important and will set its own priorities when the time comes, the following list is expected to be reviewed and given first consideration when doing so.

- 1) **Plan Implementation Issues:** Any uncertainty regarding interpretation or implementation challenges of the Sahtu Land Use Plan will be addressed as a standard agenda item at meetings of the Sahtu Land Use Working Group.
- 2) **Community Engagement Guidelines:** Review existing community engagement guidelines (by other organizations such as the LWBs, Federal Guidelines, etc.), discuss expectations for when and how engagement should occur, and define a set of best practices for the Sahtu Settlement Area, including guiding principles, processes, and roles and responsibilities of government, industry and community organizations.
- 3) **Traditional Knowledge Guidelines:** Develop guidelines for the collection (including purpose and scope), use and management of traditional knowledge within the Sahtu Settlement Area.
- 4) **Cumulative Effects and Monitoring Program:** Building on the work of the NWT Cumulative Impact Monitoring Program and previous work carried out by the SLUPB:
  - a. identify research and monitoring priorities for the Sahtu Settlement Area, giving consideration to recommendations identified in the "Great Bear Lake Watershed Research and Monitoring Plan", and "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of";

---

<sup>37</sup> Nothing in this Action implies a commitment for additional funding from either the Government of Canada or the Government of the Northwest Territories.



- b. assess and fill key knowledge gaps; and
  - c. develop, test and implement cumulative impact management strategies including landscape targets, through the land use plan.
- 5) **Community-Government Monitoring and Enforcement Plan:** Assess current patrol, monitoring, inspection and enforcement activities for opportunities to partner with community organizations to increase both community involvement and the level of occurrence of these activities, and develop a plan to act on these opportunities where reasonable to do so.
- 6) **Community Land Use Monitoring Program:** Develop protocols or standards for the training and accreditation of monitors; their roles responsibilities and authority; and funding, hiring and reporting relationships between RRCs and applicants; and develop a qualified pool of candidates within each community to be monitors.
- 7) **Best Practices:** Build on and refine the Plan's Conformity Requirements into a set of Best Practices for land use for the Sahtu Settlement Area. The results may replace the Plan's Conformity Requirements through future Plan amendments.

Additional information about each of these Items is provided in the Action Plan.

## Action #2 - Inspection and Enforcement Priorities

*All government departments and agencies and other bodies having monitoring and enforcement responsibilities will make reasonable efforts to consider the zone designation in setting their inspection and enforcement priorities, recognizing that Conservation Zones, Proposed Conservation Initiatives and Special Management Zones have been identified as sensitive areas requiring a higher level of care.*

### Context and Rationale

A number of organizations have inspection and enforcement responsibilities, including ENR, AANDC, DFO, Environment Canada, and the NEB. Inspection and enforcement in the NWT is currently limited by several factors, including limited funding and the cost of all aspects of inspection and enforcement, the stringent requirements of successful enforcement actions, the competing demands for inspection and enforcement from different parts of the NWT, and the specialized training requirements of enforcement officers. Sahtu communities are concerned about the level of inspection and the lack of general patrolling and monitoring.

Inspections and monitoring are currently prioritized using a risk assessment framework, based on factors such as the nature of activity, the potential for impacts and the applicant's compliance history. The Plan's zoning identifies which areas are the most sensitive for communities. Where all else is equal, priority should be given to inspecting activities occurring in Conservation Zones and Proposed Conservation Initiatives, followed by Special Management Zones, to ensure the protection of significant values in these areas.

## Action #3 - Access to Wildlife Information

*Wildlife managers (ENR, CWS, PCA, SRRB and DFO) will make reasonable efforts to share, as circumstances require, current available data on important and critical wildlife habitat for fish, furbearers, waterfowl, raptors, barren-ground caribou, mountain and boreal woodland caribou, moose, muskox, mountain goats, Dall's sheep, grizzly bears and black bears. Data will be provided subject to laws of general application regarding privacy and access to information.*

### Context and Rationale

Applicants are expected to use the most current wildlife information and mitigate the impacts of their land uses to wildlife (see CR #7). To do that, they must have a clear understanding of which species are important, where the animals are, where areas defined as critical habitat are, and sensitive periods. While the Board has collected currently available information in the Background Report, it is at a regional scale (which may not be suitable for project-specific analysis) and may soon be outdated. The responsibility for identifying important wildlife areas and seasons rests with wildlife managers. Having this information updated and accessible for land users, Sahtu Organizations, departments and agencies for the federal and territorial governments, and co-management boards, will improve regulatory efficiency.

## Action #4 - Water Withdrawals

*DFO and the SLWB will make reasonable efforts to work with communities as requested to discuss community concerns related to water withdrawal, DFO's winter water withdrawal protocol, and alternative solutions to water withdrawal related to specific projects.*

### Context and Rationale

The residents of Colville Lake have indicated that Lac Belot has shown rapid drawdown in water levels in the past and cannot support water withdrawal for construction of ice roads or other commercial or industrial purposes.<sup>38</sup> Tulita has shared similar observations regarding Stewart Lake. Both communities have asked that these lakes not be used for commercial or industrial water withdrawal (see CR #19).

The Department of Fisheries and Oceans (DFO) stated that their surveys of Lac Belot show that the lake depth exceeds 15 m on the west side and is a "more favourable alternative as opposed to smaller lakes which may be more susceptible to withdrawal stresses should a withdrawal moratorium be put into place."<sup>39</sup> DFO also limits water withdrawal to 10% of available water volume from any water body per winter season.<sup>40</sup>

Despite these management practices, Colville Lake and Tulita remain concerned about dropping water levels and would like to discuss their knowledge of the lakes with DFO and the SLWB so that they can come to a common understanding of how to manage water withdrawal in these lakes. Further discussions between communities, DFO and the SLWB could result in changes to CR 19 in future Plan revisions.

---

<sup>38</sup> Colville Lake Meeting, January 15-16, 2009

<sup>39</sup> DFO Comments on Draft 2, December 4, 2009.

<sup>40</sup> DFO Protocol for Winter Water Withdrawal in the Northwest Territories, DFO, January 31/10.

## 4.3 RECOMMENDATIONS

### Recommendation #1 - Air Quality

1. *ENR is encouraged to provide interested parties with a paper copy of the Annual Air Quality Report, and direct them to ENR's Air Quality Programs Coordinator as necessary.*
2. *ENR is encouraged to continue to study the feasibility and advisability of expanding the air quality monitoring network in the NWT. This will be based primarily on industrial development, population growth, and available resources.*
3. *ENR is encouraged to continue to develop air quality related regulations, guidelines and/or standards, as appropriate, for application within territorial jurisdiction through the NWT Environmental Protection Act.*
4. *Regulators are encouraged to recommend to those applying for permits, licences or other authorizations that they conduct all activities in the SSA in conformity with the standards set out in the GNWT's Guidelines for Ambient Air Quality Standards, and other applicable federal or territorial regulations, guidelines or standards as they are developed.*

#### Context and Rationale

Air Quality is a valued component of environmental protection. ENR currently monitors air quality at four stations in the NWT: Yellowknife, Inuvik, Norman Wells and Fort Liard. The purpose of the program is to establish and publish a baseline against which to measure future changes in ambient air quality in the NWT. The air quality data is summarized in an annual report and published on the ENR website.

There are currently no air quality regulations under the *MVRMA*, nor does there appear to be any comprehensive federal regulation of air quality in the NWT.<sup>41</sup> The GNWT has developed guidelines for ambient air quality in the NWT (the "*Guidelines*"), but the Guidelines do not currently have the status of mandatory standards, enforceable under regulation. They are based on national standards and objectives, and are therefore appropriate as a basis for enforceable regulations.

### Recommendation #2 – Climate Change

*Applicants and regulators are encouraged to integrate an analysis of the effects of climate change into proposed land use activities, including structures and operations. These effects should be accommodated in the design, operation, and closure and reclamation of the proposed activities. Throughout the planning, development, and management phases, applicants and regulators are also encouraged to assess, report, and monitor how proposed activities contribute to climate change and take steps to minimize such effects.*

#### Context and Rationale

Increasing temperatures, variable precipitation, shorter freeze-up period, melting permafrost and other environmental changes related to climate change add to general environmental

---

<sup>41</sup> The NEB regulates oil and gas operations that contribute to the air emission waste stream.

concerns and require adaptations in the way projects are designed.<sup>42</sup> Land users need to be aware of these impacts and design their land use so they do not add to these impacts and can adapt to a changing environment. Similarly, land use activities may contribute to climate change (e.g. through increased emissions) and steps need to be taken to begin to understand and minimize those contributions.

### **Recommendation #3 – Community Land Use Monitors**

*Where deemed necessary by the community, Applicants are encouraged to fund the local Renewable Resources Council (RRC) to hire an independent, qualified community land use monitor, and support the monitor. In the case of small-scale activities where little to no environmental impact is expected, applicants are encouraged to employ a community research assistant instead.*

#### **Context and Rationale**

Applicants often hire wildlife or environmental monitors from the local communities, to assist in fulfilling the applicant's environmental and wildlife monitoring responsibilities. On the other hand, communities are interested in having their own monitors, independent from the applicant, who report to communities on all values of interest to the community and how the land use might interact with those values. Community land use monitors are hired by and report to the RRC, but the applicant funds this position and supports the applicant in the field (meals, lodging, transportation, etc.). Such arrangements have sometimes been negotiated as part of Access and Benefits Agreements. Having a community monitor builds community confidence that the values and areas important to them will not be harmed, increasing community support for the land use.

Communities wish to see this become a standard practice in the future, and the development of a community land use monitoring program was flagged as a key issue to be advanced by the Sahtu Land Use Working Group (Action #1).

#### Interpretation:

"Qualified" means that the monitor is able to identify important wildlife and their habitat, significant sites for the community, and potential risks to these from the land use activities, and be able to document and communicate their observations. The RRCs will determine the necessary qualifications when hiring their own monitors. In some cases these may be community members chosen by the RRC based on their traditional knowledge and experience with the project area. In other cases, some formal training such as certification from the Aurora College's 5-week Environmental Monitor Training Program may be needed.

---

<sup>42</sup> NWT Climate Change Impacts and Adaptation Report, Environment and Natural Resources, GNWT, 2008. Available at: [http://www.enr.gov.nt.ca/live/documents/content/NWT\\_Climate\\_Change\\_Impacts\\_and\\_Adaptation\\_Report.pdf](http://www.enr.gov.nt.ca/live/documents/content/NWT_Climate_Change_Impacts_and_Adaptation_Report.pdf)

## Recommendation #4 – Incidental Harvest

*Applicants are encouraged to avoid waste of usable resources and share any incidental harvest with nearby communities.*

### **Context**

Some land uses require the incidental harvest of other resources to access the desired resource (e.g. cutting trees to build a road or clear a seismic line; harvest of fish or wildlife for research and trophy hunting where only certain body parts are needed). Reasonable efforts should be made to reduce incidental harvests wherever possible. Where it is not possible, the resources should not be wasted. If the applicant cannot use the resources directly, they should be distributed to local communities for their use. For instance, meat is regularly dispersed to communities from big game outfitters.

Currently, forest resources on Crown land are under the authority of the GNWT. Land Use Permit holders are to avoid merchantable timber where possible and sensitive areas where timber is not to be decked are identified. The Land Use Permit holder does not have the authority to transport the timber unless they obtain an authorization from ENR, Forest Management, to do so.

# CHAPTER 5- PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

---

## 5.1 SHARED RESPONSIBILITY FOR IMPLEMENTATION

Plan implementation is a shared responsibility. The Plan “belongs” to the approving Parties – SSI (and the District Land Corporations as the landowners), the GNWT and Canada - and they are ultimately responsible for its implementation, either directly through the authorizations and dispositions they grant and measures they take, or indirectly through the work of co-management boards and similar bodies and their approval of decisions of such bodies. By approving the Plan, the parties accept responsibility to implement its requirements to the extent of their respective authorities.

In addition, implementation of the Plan requires the participation and cooperation of Sahtu residents and communities, co-management boards, Designated Sahtu Organizations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial governments, and applicants.

Responsibility for implementing the Plan’s Conformity Requirements rests primarily with Regulators (defined as any body with the authority to issue a licence, permit, or other authorization). The LWBs are a key regulator that will be responsible for implementing most of the Plan’s CRs through the authorizations they grant and the conditions they attach to those authorizations.

Responsibility for implementing some of the Plan’s CRs also rests with landowners when granting dispositions related to the use of land or water as per S. 5.3 below. Government departments may be both regulators (when issuing an authorization) and a land owner when granting dispositions related to the use of land or water. District Land Corporations are land owners, and have the same implementation responsibilities as government when granting dispositions for their settlement lands as per S. 5.3 below.

While the Mackenzie Valley Environmental Impact Review Board does not issue any authorizations, it is responsible for conducting environmental assessments and recommending to the Minister of AANDC whether or not a project should proceed and under what conditions. The process for determining the conformity of land uses with the land use plan will have preceded the Review Board’s assessments.

Appendices 1, 2, and 3 in the Implementation Guide identify key authorizations and dispositions that will be used to implement the Plan’s CRs.

Actions are to be implemented by the parties to which they are directed – Designated Sahtu Organizations, departments or agencies of the federal or territorial governments, or co-management boards, which have the mandated responsibility.

The Recommendations included in the Plan are regulatory in nature, applicants and regulators are encouraged to consider these recommendations in carrying out their responsibilities.



Applicants play a key role in Plan implementation. They are expected to review each CR and consider Recommendations, and demonstrate how their proposed land use is meeting the applicable CRs.

The Board's role in Plan Implementation is limited to determining conformity where an application is referred to it, granting exceptions, and monitoring Plan Implementation. This is discussed in Sections 5.4, 2.6, and 5.6, respectively.

## 5.2 AUTHORIZATIONS THAT IMPLEMENT THE PLAN

The CRs in the Plan are written to apply to land use activities in the SSA. CRs generally refer explicitly to "land use activities" or "activities". The CRs specify which land uses are allowed within certain areas of the SSA and the ways in which these activities should be carried out. CRs are intended to protect values and achieve objectives that the Plan identifies as important and that may be affected by the use of land, waters, wildlife and other resources and by the deposit of waste.

Section 46(1) of the MVRMA addresses compliance with land use plans and establishes the legal requirement for implementing CRs:

*46. (1) The Gwich'in and Sahtu First Nations, departments and agencies of the federal and territorial governments, and every body having authority under any federal or territorial law to issue licences, permits or other authorizations relating to the use of land or waters or the deposit of waste, shall carry out their powers in accordance with the land use plan applicable in a settlement area.*

Authorizations are therefore the legal means for applying CRs to the land uses that the CRs are intended to regulate. CRs can only be implemented by using the existing powers of the bodies issuing authorizations.

Effective and efficient implementation of the Plan should be achieved by using the most appropriate authorizations for applying CRs to the land uses that they are intended to regulate. The use of authorizations to implement the Plan should not result in CRs applying to land uses that they are not intended to regulate or in regulatory duplication when applying CRs to each land use.

Guidance from the Government of Canada, GNWT, and the SLUPB on the authorizations and dispositions that could be used to implement CRs is provided in Appendices 1-3 of the Implementation Guide. These tables are for information purposes only and are not legally binding. Each regulator or land owner whose powers fall within s. 46(1) of the *MVRMA* is responsible for carrying out its powers in accordance with the Plan.

The bodies that have authority for issuing authorizations to implement the Plan, as identified in s. 46(1), are responsible for ensuring that land uses comply with applicable CRs. Duplication of regulatory requirements may be avoided by identifying one or more lead authorizations as needed, to ensure conformity with the applicable CRs by each land use that is subject to the Plan. Land use permits and water licences may be the appropriate lead authorizations for many

land uses. In some cases, other authorizations may be needed to complement the requirements that can be addressed through land use permits and water licences to ensure conformity with CRs when they apply to land uses that do not require a land use permit or water licence.

Where one or more lead authorizations are used to ensure conformity with the applicable CRs for a land use, regulators can meet their obligation to “carry out their powers in accordance with the land use plan” by ensuring that any other authorizations are consistent with the lead authorization on matters related to conformity with the Plan. This approach could avoid the need for all of the authorizations that apply to a land use to include requirements addressing all applicable CRs, thereby promoting the efficient use of authorizations to link CRs with land uses. As long as no authorization is issued in contravention of applicable CRs, S. 46(1) requirements will be met.

Ensuring the effective and efficient use of authorizations to implement the Plan will be a priority for the regulatory bodies and the SLUPB as they monitor and learn from the application of the SLUP to land uses in the SSA. The authorizations/dispositions tables were placed in the Implementation Guide to remain flexible and adaptable as all implementing bodies learn through experience. The SLUPB’s powers to make conformity determinations and grant exceptions to the Plan could be used to provide guidance on the use of authorizations to implement CRs and to reduce or eliminate regulatory duplication. Any unintended consequences relating to the use of authorizations to implement the Plan could also be addressed through amendments to the Plan and could be considered as part of the five-year review.

## **5.3 IMPLEMENTATION OF CONFORMITY REQUIREMENTS THROUGH DISPOSITIONS**

The District Land Corporations, and the federal and territorial governments, as landowners, have additional Plan implementation responsibilities related to the sale, lease or other disposition of surface and subsurface interests in land and resources (including agreements negotiated by the District Land Corporations related to access, granular resources or water rights). These are also intended to be subject to the land use plan.<sup>43</sup>

Because these dispositions grant rights, which will lead to land use, but do not authorize land use themselves, they are only subject to those CRs that prohibit land use, not those that place conditions on land use. Rights issuance or dispositions by land owners and contracts to access the surface of Sahtu Settlement Lands are therefore only subject to the following CRs:

- CR #1 – Land Use Zoning
- CR #16 – Fish Farming and Aquaculture
- CR #18 – Uses of Du K’ets’Edi Conservation Zone (Sentinel Islands)<sup>44</sup>

Land use activities on the lands that are the subject of a disposition will generally require subsequent authorisations, such as land use permits or water licenses. The remainder of the applicable CRs will be implemented through the appropriate authorization(s) for these activities.

---

<sup>43</sup> SDMCLCA, S.25.2.9.

<sup>44</sup> Note of clarification: CR#18 applies to Zone 26, which is a Conservation Zone. No rights issuances will be issued for land use activities that are prohibited in Conservation Zones as specified in CR#1.

It is the responsibility of the landowner and rights holder to be aware of and consider the other CRs at the time the disposition is granted.

## 5.4 CONFORMITY DETERMINATION

Conformity determination is the process of checking whether a land use activity (as described in an application for a licence, permit or other authorization or a related disposition) conforms to the Plan's applicable Conformity Requirements. Conformity determinations may be done by the regulator (or owner responsible for the disposition), or by the SLUPB. Under s. 47(1) of the *MVRMA*, the SLUPB only does conformity determinations where the activity is referred to the Board by SSI, a department or agency of the federal or territorial government, the regulators involved in the application, or by any person directly affected by the proposed activity. The referral must be made before the issuance of any licence, permit or other authorization required for the activity.<sup>45</sup> Where an activity is referred to the SLUPB to do the conformity determination, the Board's decision is final and binding.<sup>46</sup>

It is expected that each regulator/land owner will build a conformity determination process into their own processes in reviewing applications to fulfill their implementation responsibilities under S. 46(1). Where an activity is referred to it, the Board will conduct a conformity determination and transmit its decision as per S. 46(3) of the *MVMRA*. Further guidance on conformity determinations is provided in the Implementation Guide.

If any activity is found not to conform (by either a regulator, or by the Board upon referral) the applicant may apply for an exception as per S. 2.6 of the Plan.

## 5.5 ENFORCEMENT

AANDC inspectors are responsible for inspecting and enforcing terms and conditions of land use permits and water licences, some of which will implement Conformity Requirements of the Plan. The GNWT has some enforcement responsibilities relating to land use permit/water licence terms and conditions relating to areas within their jurisdiction such as wildlife and forestry. Other departments and agencies, such as Environment Canada, DFO and the NEB, also have their own inspectors or enforcement officers. To the extent that Plan requirements are included as terms and conditions of licences, permits and other authorizations, AANDC, the GNWT and other departments and agencies with enforcement powers will be enforcing implementation of the land use plan.

## 5.6 MONITORING IMPLEMENTATION OF THE PLAN

As per S. 44 of the *MVRMA*, following Plan approval, the SLUPB will monitor implementation of the Plan. The Board will monitor and assess the following aspects of Plan implementation:

- Is the Plan achieving its goals and advancing the vision?

---

<sup>45</sup> *MVRMA* S. 47 (2)

<sup>46</sup> *MVRMA* S. 47(4)

- Is the Plan being implemented fully and appropriately?
- Would further clarification assist in accurately interpreting and implementing the Plan?
- How is the Plan affecting the regulatory system (is it having the desired result)?
- Are there new land uses or questions not addressed by the Plan that should be considered in future amendments or 5-year reviews?
- Have exception requests or other types of feedback identified Plan amendments that should be considered?

The Board will monitor Plan implementation primarily through its participation in regulatory processes, by reviewing authorizations and dispositions of rights and interests issued by regulators and land owners, and through regular dialogue with planning partners. Additional information on the Board's monitoring activities are provided in the Implementation Guide.

## 5.7 AMENDMENTS

The Plan amendment process is described under S. 48 (1) of the *MVRMA*: "A planning board may, on application or on its own motion, adopt any amendments to a land use plan that the planning board considers necessary." If the Board adopts an amendment, it will submit the amendment to SSI, the GNWT and Canada following the same approval process as described in S. 43 of the *MVRMA*. The amendment will come into effect when approved by the federal Minister.

Plan amendments will most likely occur as a result of the 5-year review of the Plan. However, an amendment may be requested at any time by anyone following approval of the original Plan. Plan amendments may be considered for a variety of reasons, including the need to address a new land use, consider new information, update the status and application of the Plan to a newly established protected area, or clarify Plan requirements (see listing under S. 5.8 Five Year Review for a more comprehensive list). Additional considerations and the process for Plan amendments are provided in the Implementation Guide.

## 5.8 FIVE YEAR REVIEW

Under S. 50 of the *MVRMA*, the "planning board shall carry out a comprehensive review of a land use plan not later than five years after the plan takes effect and thereafter every five years or at any other intervals agreed to by the federal Minister, the territorial Minister and [SSI]." The Board will work with the Parties, communities and other planning partners to determine if or what revisions are required. Key considerations of the review will include:

- Do the vision and goals still reflect the values of the region?
- Is the Plan achieving the vision and goals of the region and of the individual zones?
- Is the Plan achieving the purposes established for it under the *SDMCLCA* and the *MVRMA*?
- Have there been any exception or amendment requests that signal a need for a change?
- Is there new information available that needs to be considered in land use decisions?
- Have there been changes in Proposed Conservation Initiatives that need to be updated in the Plan?

- Are there new land uses, issues or major projects on the horizon that need to be addressed?
- Have there been any challenges related to the implementation of Conformity Determinations that need to be addressed?
- Are there areas of ambiguity that can be better clarified?
- What progress has been made on Actions?
- How effective are the current Recommendations?

The Five-Year Review may result in two possible outcomes:

- a. If the Board determines that no revisions are necessary, the previous Plan will continue in effect.
- b. If the Board determines that amendments are required, the Board will adopt the proposed amendments, and submit them for approval to the three Parties, following the same approval process as set out in Section 43 of the *MVRMA*. The amended plan will take effect once it is approved by the federal Minister. The previous Plan will remain in effect until then.

Additional information on the 5-Year Review is provided in the Board's Action Plan.

# APPENDICES



## Appendix 1. Zone Descriptions

The Plan establishes 66 zones, which are described in this Appendix, and General Use Zones. All zone descriptions are based on reports and documents used in the Plan's Background Report. The Background Report contains greater detail on the sources of information used and includes mapping on the social, cultural, ecological and economic values of the Sahtu Settlement Area (SSA).

The origins of SLUP zone names came from the communities during initial mapping exercises, workshops, and as used in other public processes and previously published documents. The SLUPB recognized throughout the planning process that there are differences in dialect that result in alternative spellings for geographical features, as well as inconsistencies in Dene font usage. As part of future planning efforts the SLUPB will work with communities to improve its Dene language inclusion on maps and in planning documents. Users of the Plan should understand that locally these zones may be referenced by alternative spellings or names.

Readers are referred to Table 4 and the zone descriptions for key values present in each zone. Tables 5-7 are prepared to assist readers in determining the location of the relevant map reference and zone description.

### Table Note:

- Conservation Zones (CZ) - Green
- Special Management Zones (SMZ) - Yellow
- Proposed Conservation Initiatives (PCI) - Grey



**Table 6. Zones Listed by Zone Number**

Zone No.	Dene Zone Name	English Zone Name	Map No.	Zone Description Page No.
1	Besla Nilne	Ontaratue River	5	79
2	Òhdarah Tué	Marion Lakes	5	80
3	Shigago	Little Chicago	5	81
4		Travaillant Uplands	5	83
5	Sihoniłıne ʔehtene	Loon River to Fort Anderson Trail	5	84
6		Fort Anderson Trail Lakes	5	85
7		Colville Upland Lakes	5	86
8	Bela Nera Dele	Where the Wolf Crosses	6	87
9	Tué Sho & Dunedelatue	Aubrey Dunedelatue	6	88
10	Ayonikı	Maunoir Dome	6	89
11	Sihoniłıne	Anderson River	6	91
12	Dene Di Gon'e		6	93
13	Tashín Tué	Lac Des Bois	6	94
14	Nilın Tué	Lac Belot	6	96
15		Fossil Lake	7	97
16	Ne'Rahten		7	98
17		Hare Indian River	7	99
18	Neyádalín	Underground River	7	100
19		Bluefish Creek to Tsintu River	7	102
20		Snafu Creek	7	103
21	Nɔfee K'ɔdah Tué	Lac a Jacques	7	104
22	Arakíe Tué	Horton Lake	8	105
23	Sahtu	Great Bear Lake Watershed	8	106
24	Neregah	Northshore	8	110
25	Du K'ets'edi SMZ	Sentinel Islands SMZ	8	112
26	Du K'ets'edi CZ	Sentinel Islands CZ	8	114
27	Edaíıla	Caribou Point	8	116
28	Turatlın Tué	Tunago Lake	8	118
29		Clement Lake	8	119
30	Luchaniline	Whitefish River	8	120
31	Tehkaicho Dé	Johnny Hoe River	8	122
32	Petinizah	Bear Rock	9	124
33	Sahtu Deh	Great Bear River	9	126
34		Mackay, Rusty and Yellow Lakes	9	128
35	Táhlı Tué & Táshín Tué	Stewart and Tate Lakes	9	129
36		Mio Lake	9	130
37	Tıı Dehdele Dııdıı	Red Dog Mountain	9	131
38		Mackenzie Mountains	10	133
39	Do Et'Q	Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail Reserve	10	136
40	Shúhtagot'ıne Néné	Mountain Dene Land	10	138
41	Nááts'ıhch'oh		10	140
42	Faʔfa Nilıne	Mountain River Extension	11	143
43		Carcajou River	11	145
44		Florence Lake	11	146

45		Palmer Lake	11	147
46	K'ááchohtíídeé	Mountain River	11	148
47		Cache Lake	11	150
48	Tuésene	Mountain Hot Springs	11	151
49		Mirage Mountain	11	152
50		Norman Range	12	153
51	Yamõga Fee	Yamoga Rock	12	155
52		Chick Lake	12	156
53		Sam McCrae Lake	12	157
54		Turton Lake	12	158
55	Datzimi Tué	Oscar Lake	12	159
56		Kelly Lake Protected Area (Land Claim)	12	160
57	Lugedegíl Tué & Tuyehíla Tué	Kelly and Lennie Lake	12	161
58		Doctor Lake	12	162
59	Tuwí Tué	Mahoney Lake	12	163
60		Three Day Lake	12	165
61	K'áálo Tué CZ	Willow Lake CZ	12	166
62	K'áálo Tué SMZ	Willow Lake Wetlands SMZ	12	168
63	Deh Cho	Mackenzie River	13	170
64		Mackenzie River Islands	13	172
65	Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta	Ramparts River and Wetlands	13	174
66	Tuktut Nogait		8	177

**Table 7. Zones Listed by Dene Name Alphabetical**

Zone No.	Dene Zone Name	English Zone Name	Map No.	Zone Description Page No.
22	Arakíe Tué	Horton Lake	8	105
10	Ayonikı	Maunoir Dome	6	89
8	Bela Nera Dele	Where the Wolf Crosses	6	87
1	Besla Nilíne	Ontaratue River	5	79
55	Datzimı Tué	Oscar Lake	12	159
63	Deh Cho	Mackenzie River	13	170
12	Dene Di Gon'e		6	93
39	Do Et'Q	Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail Reserve	10	136
26	Du K'ets'edi CZ	Sentinel Islands CZ	8	114
25	Du K'ets'edi SMZ	Sentinel Islands SMZ	8	112
27	Edaíila	Caribou Point	8	116
42	Fařfa Nilıne	Mountain River Extension	11	143
46	K'ááchohtíideé	Mountain River	11	148
61	K'áaıı Tué CZ	Willow Lake CZ	12	166
62	K'áaıı Tué SMZ	Willow Lake Wetlands SMZ	12	168
30	Luchaniline	Whitefish River	8	120
57	Lugedegıl Tué & Tuyehıla Tué	Kelly and Lennie Lake	12	161
41	Nááts'ihch'oh		10	140
16	Ne'Rahten		7	98
24	Neregah	Northshore	8	110
18	Neyádalín	Underground River	7	100
14	Nilın Tué	Lac Belot	6	96
21	Nıfee K'ııdah Tué	Lac a Jacques	7	104
2	ııhdarah Tué	Marion Lakes	5	80
32	Petınırah	Bear Rock	9	124
23	Sahtu	Great Bear Lake Watershed	8	106
33	Sahtu Deh	Great Bear River	9	126
3	Shıgago	Little Chicago	5	81
40	Shúhtagot'ine Néné	Mountain Dene Land	10	138
11	Sihonilıne	Anderson River	6	91
5	Sihonilıne řehtene	Loon River to Fort Anderson Trail	5	84
35	Táhlı Tué & Táshın Tué	Stewart and Tate Lakes	9	129
13	Tashın Tué	Lac Des Bois	6	94
31	Tehkaicho Dé	Johnny Hoe River	8	122
37	Tıř Dehdele Dııdıı	Red Dog Mountain	9	131
65	Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta	Ramparts River and Wetlands	13	174
9	Tué Sho & Dunedelatue	Aubrey Dunedelatue	6	88
48	Tuésene	Mountain Hot Springs	11	151
66	Tuktut Nogait		8	177
28	Turatlın Tué	Tunago Lake	8	118
59	Tuıı Tué	Mahoney Lake	12	163
51	Yamııga Fee	Yamoga Rock	12	155

**Table 8. Zones Listed by English Name Alphabetical**











Zone No.	English Zone Name	Dene Zone Name	Map No.	Zone Description Page No.
11	Anderson River	Sihoniljne	6	91
9	Aubrey Dunedelatue	Tué Sho & Dunedelatue	6	88
32	Bear Rock	Petnırah	9	124
19	Bluefish Creek to Tsintu River		7	102
47	Cache Lake		11	150
43	Carcajou River		11	145
27	Caribou Point	Edaııla	8	116
52	Chick Lake		12	156
29	Clement Lake		8	119
7	Colville Upland Lakes		5	86
58	Doctor Lake		12	162
39	Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail Reserve	Do Et'Q	10	136
44	Florence Lake		11	146
6	Fort Anderson Trail Lakes		5	85
15	Fossil Lake		7	97
23	Great Bear Lake Watershed	Sahtu	8	106
33	Great Bear River	Sahtu Deh	9	126
17	Hare Indian River		7	99
22	Horton Lake	Arakıe Tué	8	105
31	Johnny Hoe River	Tehkaicho Dé	8	122
57	Kelly and Lennie Lake	Lugedegıl Tué & Tuyehıla Tué	12	161
56	Kelly Lake Protected Area (Land Claim)		12	160
21	Lac a Jacques	Nıfee K'ıdah Tué	7	104
14	Lac Belot	Niljn Tué	6	96
13	Lac Des Bois	Tashın Tué	6	94
3	Little Chicago	Shıgago	5	81
5	Loon River to Fort Anderson Trail	Sihoniljne ?ehtene	5	84
34	Mackay, Rusty and Yellow Lakes		9	128
38	Mackenzie Mountains		10	133
63	Mackenzie River	Deh Cho	13	170
64	Mackenzie River Islands		13	172
59	Mahoney Lake	Tuwı Tué	12	163
2	Marion Lakes	ıhdarah Tué	5	80
10	Maunoir Dome	Ayonıkı	6	89
36	Mio Lake		9	130
49	Mirage Mountain		11	152
40	Mountain Dene Land	Shıhtagot'ıne Néné	10	138
48	Mountain Hot Springs	Tuésene	11	151
46	Mountain River	K'ááchohtııdeé	11	148
42	Mountain River Extension	Farfa Niljne	11	143
50	Norman Range		12	153
24	Northshore	Neregah	8	110

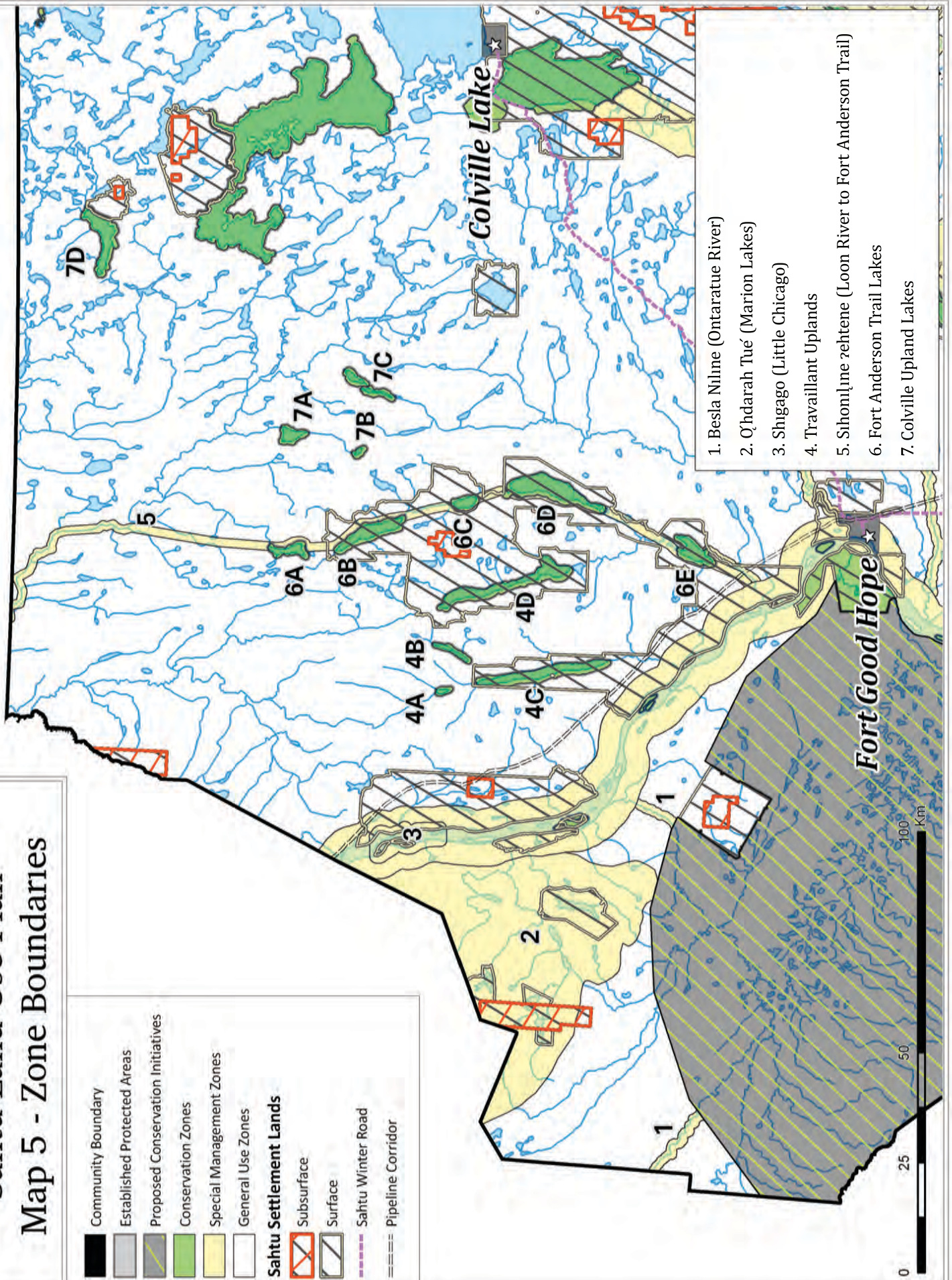


1	Ontaratue River	Besla Niline	5	79
55	Oscar Lake	Datzımı Tué	12	159
45	Palmer Lake		11	147
65	Ramparts River and Wetlands	Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta	13	174
37	Red Dog Mountain	Tłı Dehdele Dıdlı	9	131
53	Sam McCrae Lake		12	157
26	Sentinel Islands CZ	Du K'ets'edı CZ	8	114
25	Sentinel Islands SMZ	Du K'ets'edı SMZ	8	112
20	Snafu Creek		7	103
35	Stewart and Tate Lakes	Táhlı Tué & Táshín Tué	9	129
60	Three Day Lake		12	165
4	Travaillant Uplands		5	83
28	Tunago Lake	Turatlın Tué	8	118
54	Turton Lake		12	158
18	Underground River	Neyádalín	7	100
8	Where the Wolf Crosses	Bela Nera Dele	6	87
30	Whitefish River	Luchaniline	8	120
61	Willow Lake CZ	K'áalı Tué CZ	12	166
62	Willow Lake Wetlands SMZ	K'áalı Tué SMZ	12	168
51	Yamoga Rock	Yamoga Fee	12	155

# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 5 - Zone Boundaries

-  Community Boundary
-  Established Protected Areas
-  Proposed Conservation Initiatives
-  Conservation Zones
-  Special Management Zones
-  General Use Zones
- Sahtu Settlement Lands**
-  Subsurface
-  Surface
-  Sahtu Winter Road
-  Pipeline Corridor



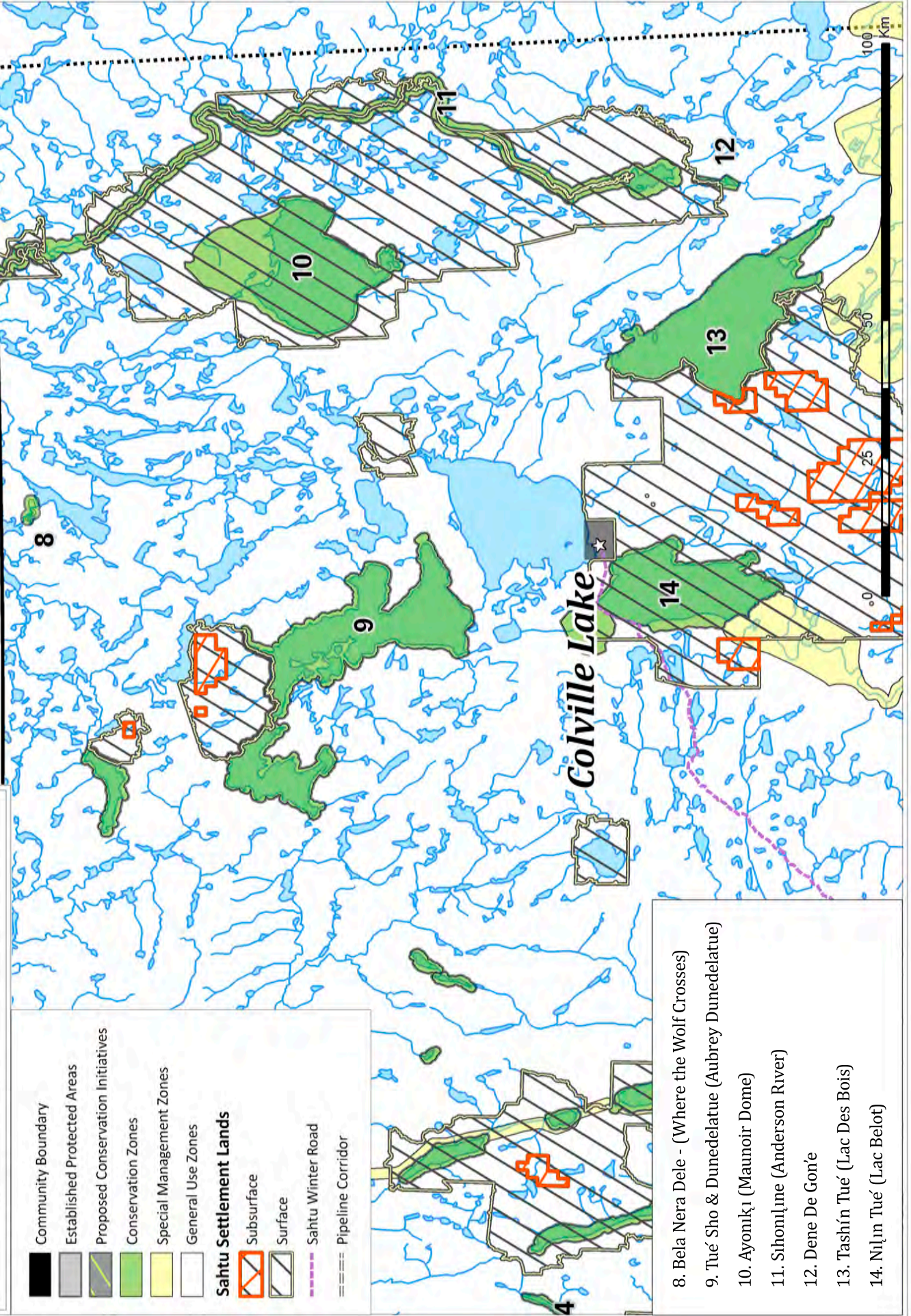
1. Besla Niline (Ontaratue River)
2. O'hdarah Tue' (Marion Lakes)
3. Shigago (Little Chicago)
4. Travaillant Uplands
5. Sihomijne zehtene (Loon River to Fort Anderson Trail)
6. Fort Anderson Trail Lakes
7. Colville Upland Lakes





# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 6 - Zone Boundaries

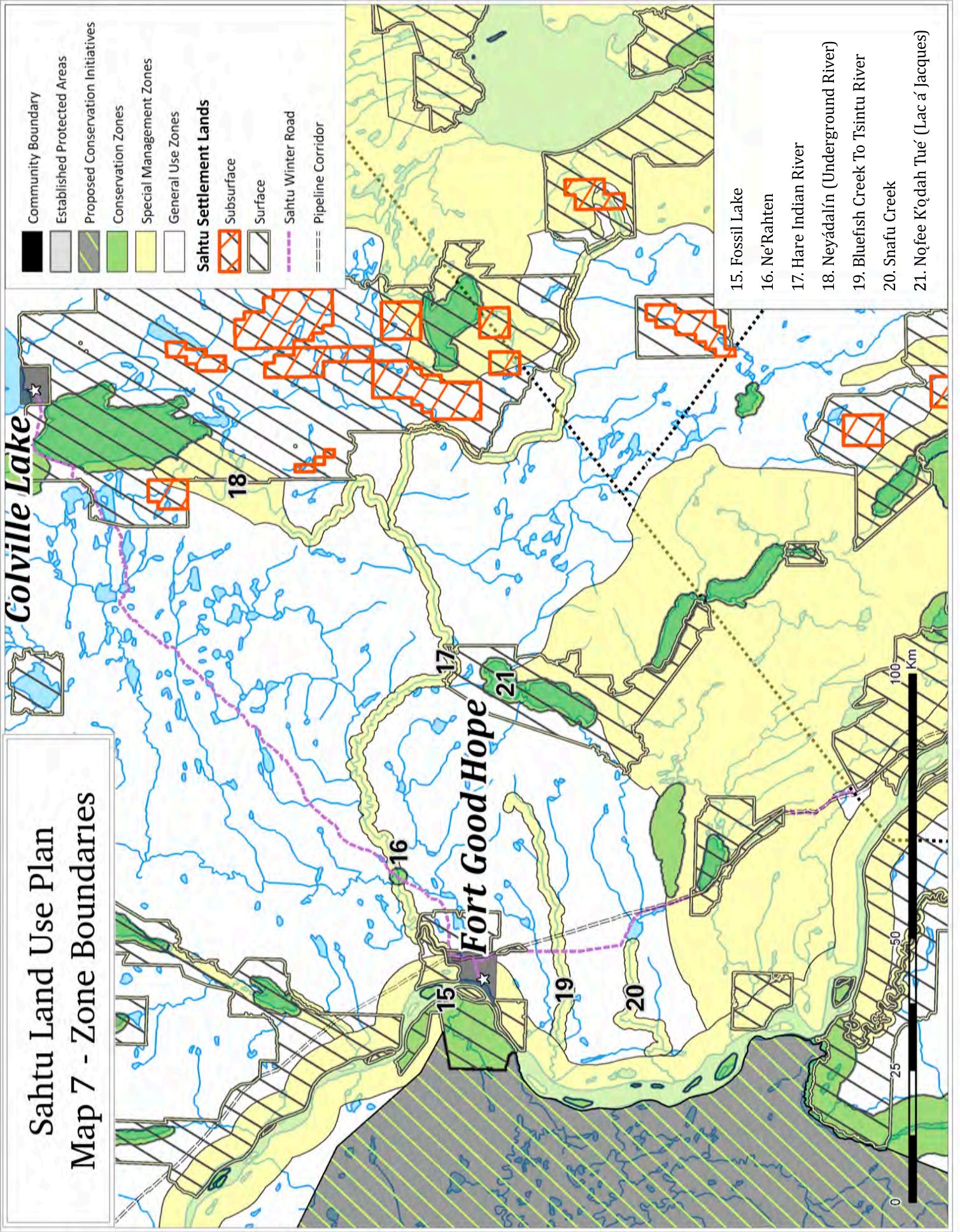


- 8. Bela Nera Dele - (Where the Wolf Crosses)
- 9. Tué Sho & Dunedelatue (Aubrey Dunedelatue)
- 10. Ayomik̄ı (Maunoir Dome)
- 11. Sihom̄ııne (Anderson River)
- 12. Dene De Gon'e
- 13. Tashín Tué (Lac Des Bois)
- 14. Nı̄ıın Tué (Lac Belot)



# Colville Lake

## Sahtu Land Use Plan Map 7 - Zone Boundaries

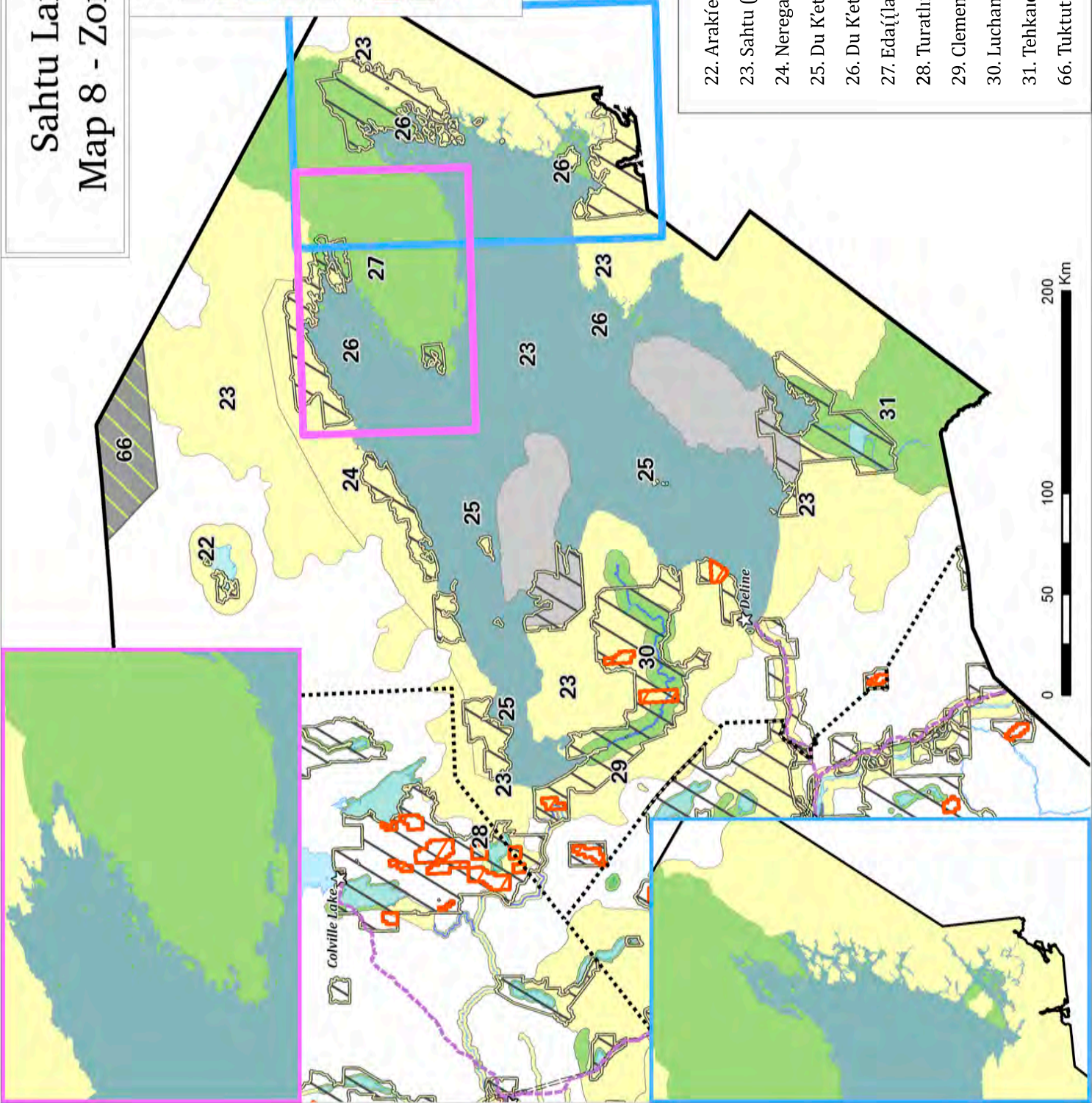




# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 8 - Zone Boundaries

- Community Boundary
- Established Protected Areas
- Proposed Conservation Initiatives
- Conservation Zones
- Special Management Zones
- General Use Zones
- Sahtu Settlement Lands**
  - Subsurface
  - Surface
- Sahtu Winter Road
- MGP Proposed Route









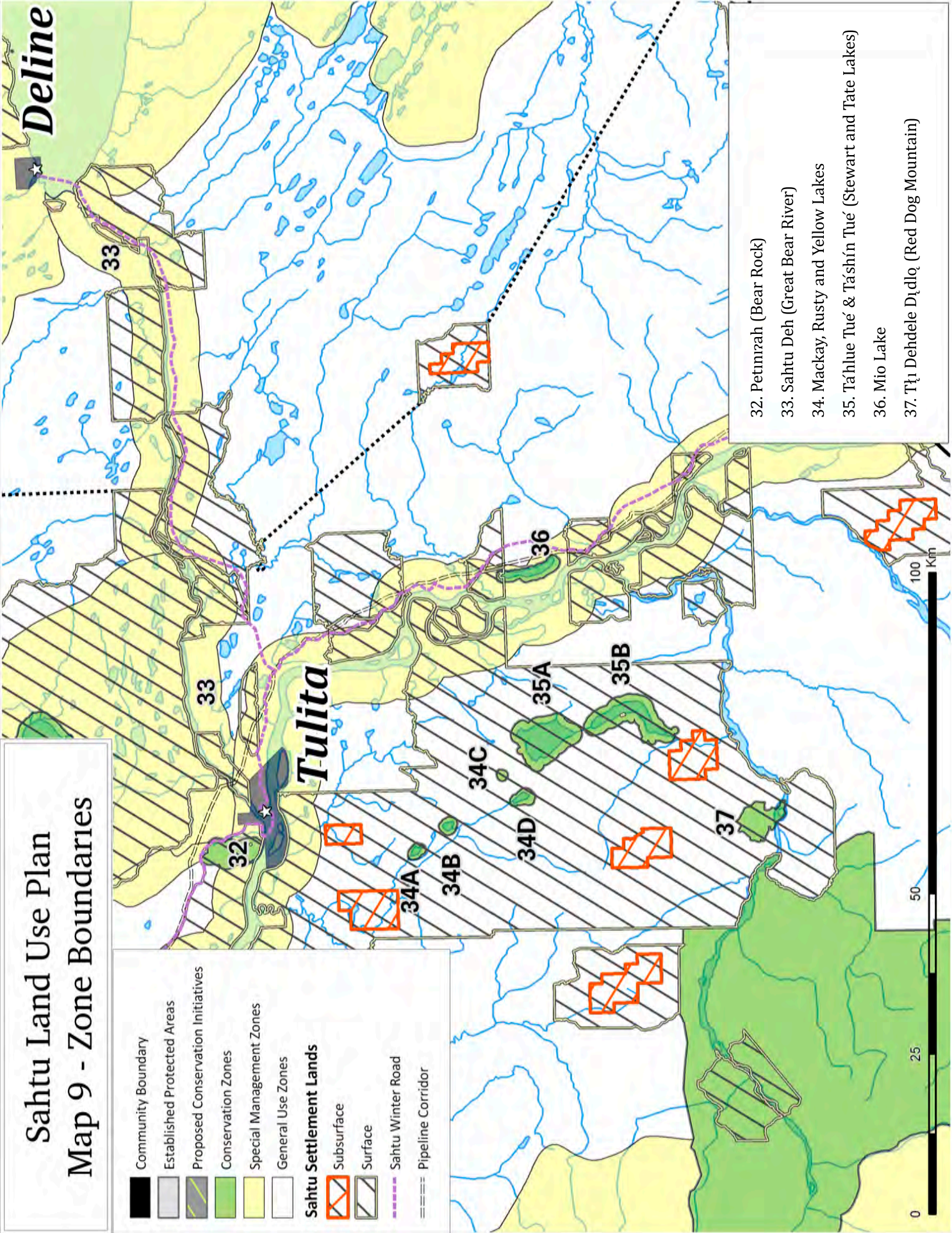
- 22. Arakíe Tué (Horton Lake)
- 23. Sahtu (Great Bear Lake Watershed)
- 24. Neregah (Northshore)
- 25. Du K'ets edí SMZ (Sentinel Islands SMZ)
- 26. Du K'ets edí CZ (Sentinel Islands CZ)
- 27. Edaí'íla (Caribou Point)
- 28. Turathín Tué (Tunago Lake)
- 29. Clement Lake
- 30. Luchamlíne (Whitefish River)
- 31. Tehkaicho De' (Johnny Hoe River)
- 66. Tuktut Nogait



# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 9 - Zone Boundaries

-  Community Boundary
-  Established Protected Areas
-  Proposed Conservation Initiatives
-  Conservation Zones
-  Special Management Zones
-  General Use Zones
- Sahtu Settlement Lands**
-  Subsurface
-  Surface
-  Sahtu Winter Road
-  Pipeline Corridor

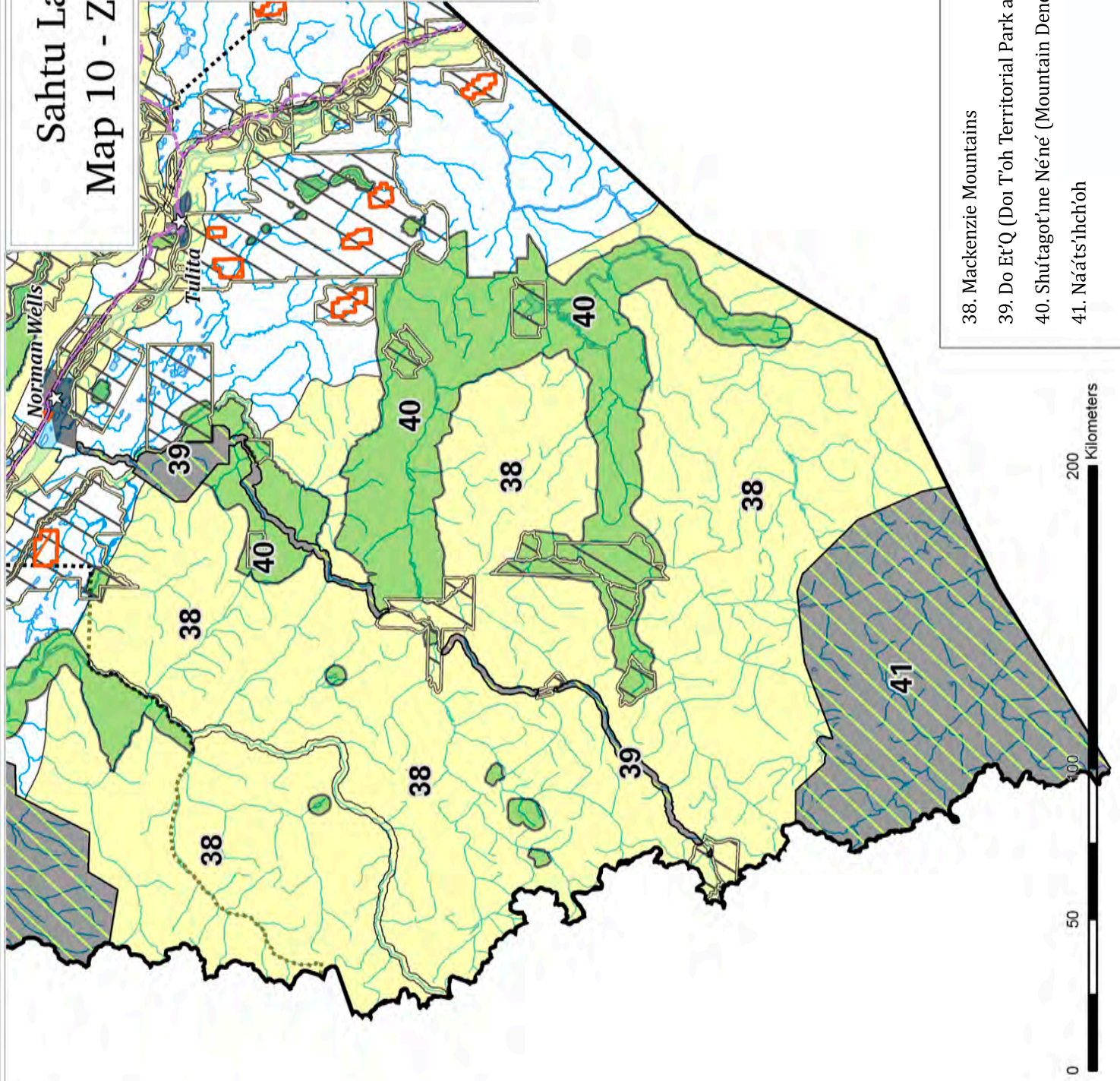


- 32. Petmrah (Bear Rock)
- 33. Sahtu Deh (Great Bear River)
- 34. Mackay, Rusty and Yellow Lakes
- 35. Táhlue Tué & Táshín Tué (Stewart and Tate Lakes)
- 36. Mio Lake
- 37. Tłı Dehdele Dıdlo (Red Dog Mountain)



# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 10 - Zone Boundaries













- 38. Mackenzie Mountains
- 39. Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail Reserve
- 40. Shu'tagot'ine Ne'ne' (Mountain Dene Land)
- 41. Na'ats'ihch'oh

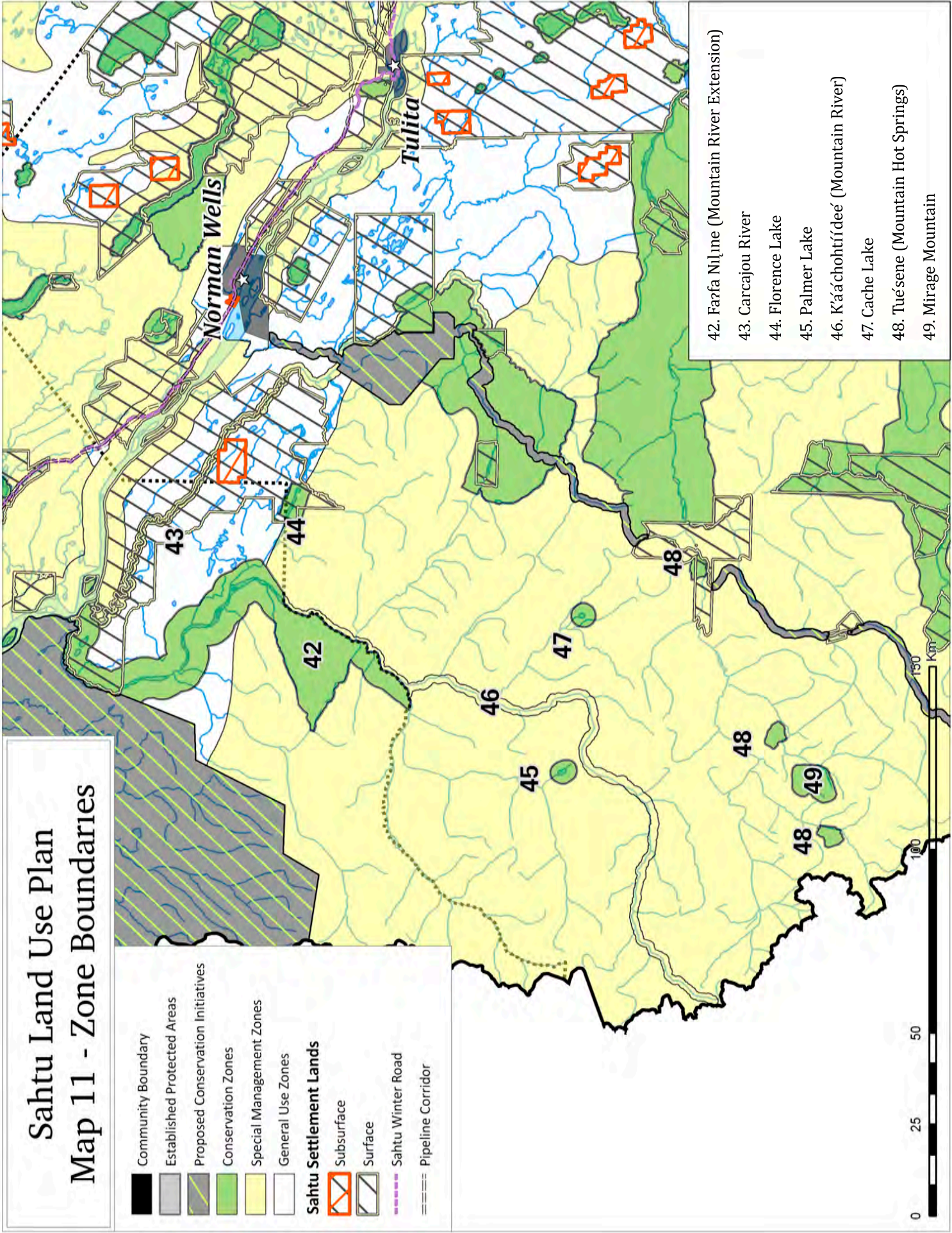


# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 11 - Zone Boundaries

-  Community Boundary
-  Established Protected Areas
-  Proposed Conservation Initiatives
-  Conservation Zones
-  Special Management Zones
-  General Use Zones
- Sahtu Settlement Lands**
-  Subsurface
-  Surface
-  Sahtu Winter Road
-  Pipeline Corridor

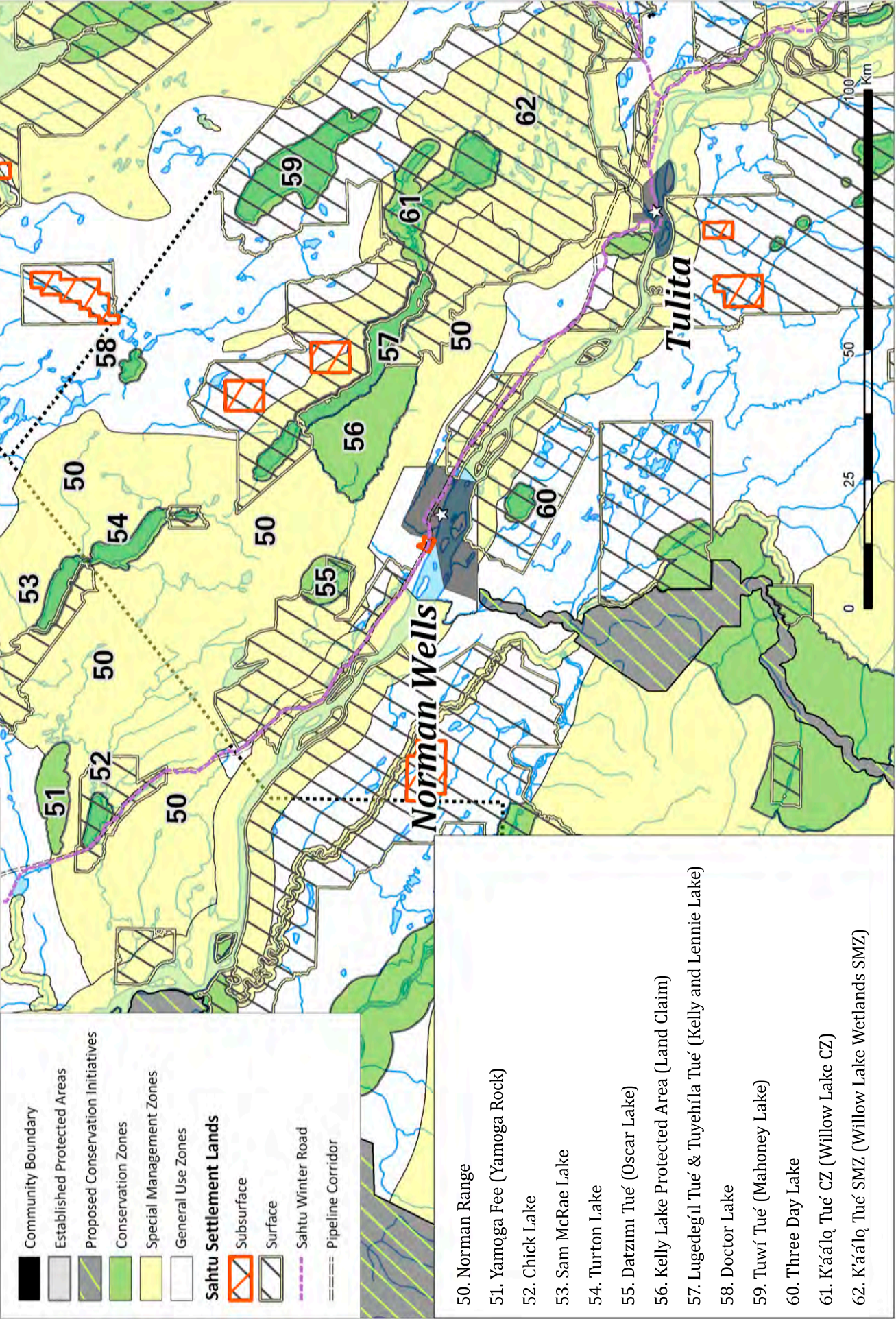
- 42. Faʔfa Niłme (Mountain River Extension)
- 43. Carcajou River
- 44. Florence Lake
- 45. Palmer Lake
- 46. K'aáchohtídee (Mountain River)
- 47. Cache Lake
- 48. Tuésene (Mountain Hot Springs)
- 49. Mirage Mountain





# Sahtu Land Use Plan

## Map 12 - Zone Boundaries

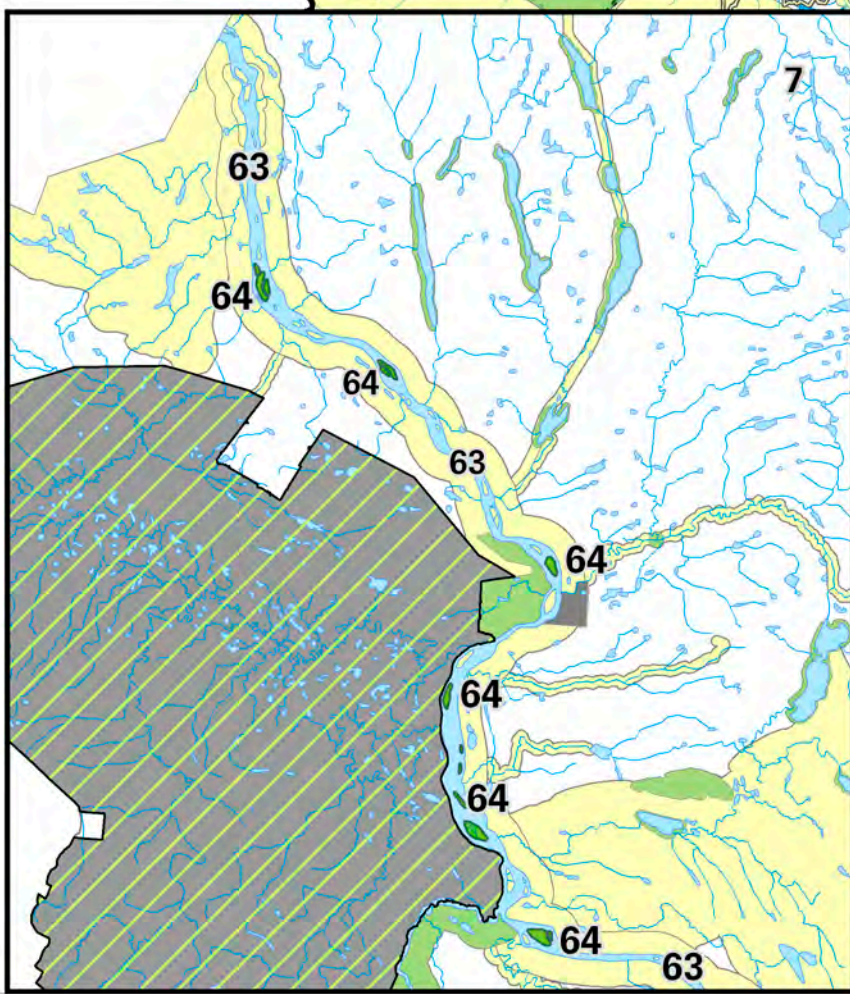
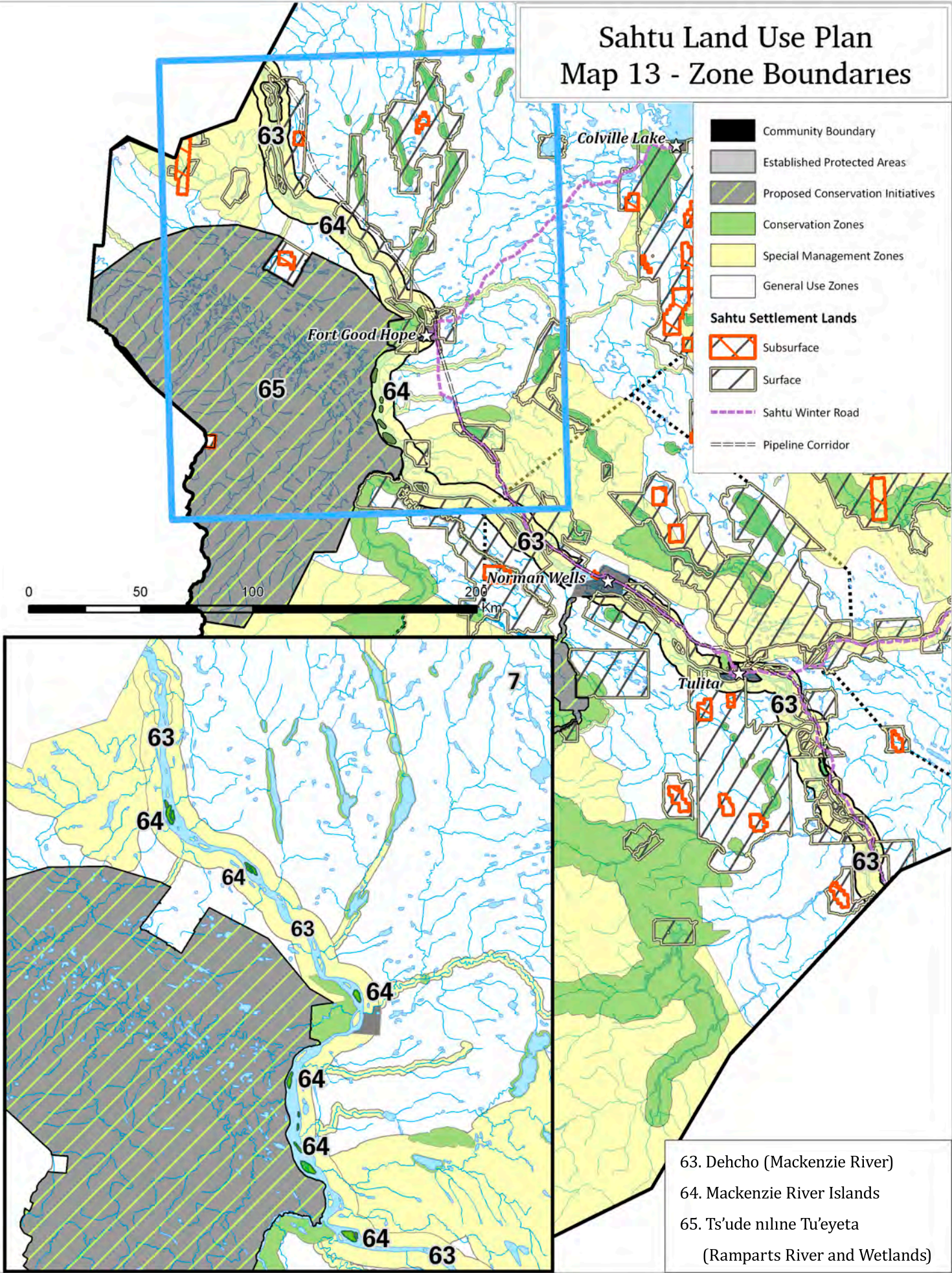


- 50. Norman Range
- 51. Yamoga Fee (Yamoga Rock)
- 52. Chick Lake
- 53. Sam McRae Lake
- 54. Turton Lake
- 55. Datzumi Tué (Oscar Lake)
- 56. Kelly Lake Protected Area (Land Claim)
- 57. Lugedeg'il Tué & Tuyeh'la Tué (Kelly and Lennie Lake)
- 58. Doctor Lake
- 59. Tuwí Tué (Mahoney Lake)
- 60. Three Day Lake
- 61. K'áá'lo Tué CZ (Willow Lake CZ)
- 62. K'áá'lo Tué SMZ (Willow Lake Wetlands SMZ)



# Sahtu Land Use Plan Map 13 - Zone Boundaries

-  Community Boundary
-  Established Protected Areas
-  Proposed Conservation Initiatives
-  Conservation Zones
-  Special Management Zones
-  General Use Zones
- Sahtu Settlement Lands**
-  Subsurface
-  Surface
-  Sahtu Winter Road
-  Pipeline Corridor



- 63. Dehcho (Mackenzie River)
- 64. Mackenzie River Islands
- 65. Ts'ude nilne Tu'eyeta  
(Ramparts River and Wetlands)



# 1. Besla Niline (Ontaratue River)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	5	
<b>Area</b>	66 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 1 km buffer has been applied to both shores of the Ontaratue River that extends north of the Ts'ude niline Tu'eteta Ramparts proposed PAS boundary.	

## Reasons for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 1 km Special Management buffer be applied to a number of rivers and large creeks in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** This is a recreational and subsistence use area. It is used for gatherings, hunting, trapping, fishing, berry and plant picking. Wetlands, barren-ground caribou, boreal woodland caribou, bears, and fish are all found in the zone, and it is a Important Wildlife Area for moose.

**Values to Take into account:** Firewood and log timber collection. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** The oil and gas potential: 66% very high; 34% moderate high.

## 2. Q̄hdarah Tué (Marion Lakes)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	5	
<b>Area</b>	1,766 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	6.5%	11.1%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Includes Marion Lake and a number of fish lakes in the north-western corner of the SSA.	

### Reason for Establishment

Marion Lake and adjacent fish lakes have important subsistence use and wildlife habitat values. The zone is an important heritage location with a number of burial and archaeological sites.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** High quality wildlife habitat for boreal woodland caribou, important breeding duck habitat<sup>47</sup>, wetlands, riparian habitat, eskers, furbearer habitat and fish bearing lakes are found in the zone. Bears, moose, waterfowl and migratory birds are also in the zone. Subsistence use includes wildlife harvest of fish, moose, waterfowl and furbearers.

**Values to Take into account:** Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 23% high; 70% moderate high; 7% moderate.

<sup>47</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<b>3. Shigago (Little Chicago)</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	5	
<b>Area</b>	116 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	33.5%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located on the Mackenzie River near the Sahtu boundary with the Gwich'in. A 1.5 km buffer around islands and shoreline includes heritage locations and infrastructure such as airstrips, staging areas and barge landing sites.	

### Reason for Establishment

Little Chicago is a historic site associated with the Klondike. The zone protects physical heritage in the form of cabins as well as infrastructure (barge landing site, airstrip, equipment staging area and access roads) that will facilitate future development in the Sahtu. It continues to be a subsistence use location for hunting, fishing and trapping. It is also a location for fish camps.

**Values to be Protected:** Heritage buildings, burial and archaeological sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Heritage sites such as camp sites and recreational areas. Wildlife habitat includes wetlands, important breeding duck habitat<sup>48</sup>, an Important Wildlife Area<sup>49</sup> for moose, a Special Harvesting Area (as per *SDMCLCA*) for fish and birds and a CWS Terrestrial Habitat Site<sup>50</sup>.

CWS has identified four Important Bird Areas (IBA) as key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the NWT. These IBAs represent important breeding habitat for globally and continentally significant concentrations of several species. The Middle Mackenzie River Islands is a globally significant IBA. It is located within the zone and is visited by birds such as the Greater White-fronted Goose, Canada Goose, Tundra Swans as well as many duck species during annual spring migrations. Between two and six percent of the global population of Snow Goose congregate in the Middle Mackenzie River Islands IBA.<sup>51</sup>

Wildlife harvesting of barren-ground caribou, furbearers, fish, moose and waterfowl (particularly snow geese) is documented.

**Values to Take into account:** Abandoned cabins and outposts camps, traditional trails. Little Chicago continues to be an important home base for the Shigago Got'ine regional group<sup>52</sup> and especially for the Charney, Edgi and Shae families<sup>53</sup>. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

<sup>48</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>49</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>50</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., March 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., Occasional Paper No. 114

<sup>51</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010:

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)

<sup>52</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>53</sup> *ibid*



**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% moderate. Documented gravel and sand deposits. Existing and future infrastructure: current infrastructure includes an airstrip, equipment staging area, access roads and barge landing site. MGP roads and infrastructure buildings are planned for the zone.

**Additional Information:** For more information on the Important Bird Areas see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

During the fur trade era, several independent fur traders established cabins in the area. The site was so named after a group of prospectors from Chicago stopped in the area on their way to the Klondike.<sup>54</sup>

The *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>55</sup> and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>56</sup> reports suggested:

- Territorial Historic Park designation in partnership with Fort Good Hope to assure continued subsistence use by communities;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources;
- Architectural and historical documentation of buildings to examine potential for preservation and restoration; and
- Surface protection of documented sites.

---

<sup>54</sup>Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>55</sup> ibid

<sup>56</sup>*Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April-May 2001*, prepared for the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board by Jennifer Blomqvist.

## 4. Travaillant Uplands (Yeltea, Manuel, Boil Betuwe and Onhda Lakes)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibitions: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	5	
<b>Area</b>	187 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	89.4%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Yeltea Lake, Manuel Lake, Boil Betuwe and Onhda Lake are located in the north-western corner of the K'asho Got'ine District, east of the Mackenzie River.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** All of the lakes are fish bearing. Wildlife habitat such as wetlands, important breeding duck habitat<sup>57</sup>, Important Wildlife Area for furbearers, waterfowl and migratory birds, barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou habitat occur. Furbearers, waterfowl, birds, fish and caribou are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, outpost camps, cabins and recreational areas. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 16% moderate high; 84% moderate. Sand deposits occur. Existing and proposed infrastructure: MGP roads.

<sup>57</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

## 5. Sihoniljne ?ehtene (Loon River to Fort Anderson Trail)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	5	
<b>Area</b>	329 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	43.1%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	The trail begins at the mouth of the Loon River, at its confluence with the Mackenzie River in the north-western corner of the SSA. It connects with Loon Lake (6E), Rorey Lake (6D), Round Lake (6C), Carcajou Lake (6B), Canot Lake (6A) and follows the Carnwath River to Anderson Forks and down the right bank of the Anderson River to Fort Anderson. <sup>58</sup>	

### Reason for Establishment

The trail has heritage, cultural and subsistence use values. It was used for generations as one of the main routes to the barren-lands for summer and fall caribou hunting. Stories, heritage sites and named places are associated with it. A sky burial took place at Round Lake where 6 people starved to death. This is a sensitive place.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological sites and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, moose, waterfowl and birds inhabit the zone. Important breeding duck habitat<sup>59</sup>, wetlands and Important Wildlife Area for furbearers occur. Canot, Carcajou, Rorey and Loon Lakes are all fish lakes. Moose, caribou, waterfowl and furbearers are harvested throughout and occur in high concentration. Berry and plant harvest sites are documented. A may be at risk plant<sup>60</sup>, *Pedicularis verticillata* has been documented.

**Values to Take into account:** Outpost camps, cabins, traditional trails, firewood and log timber collection, recreational areas and cultural/historic sites. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 27% moderate high; 73% moderate. Existing and proposed infrastructure: MGP borrow site, MGP proposed route, proposed Mackenzie Valley highway route.

**Additional Information:** The *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>61</sup> report suggested:

- Oral history and archaeological research to inventory, document and protect heritage resources;
- Surface protection of documented sites with commemoration of specific sites;
- Cultural revival projects (eg. walking the trail with youth and elders) to recreate trail experience; and
- Special consideration in the land use planning process.

<sup>58</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>59</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>60</sup> Northwest Territories Protected Areas Strategy Science Team. (August 6, 2009). Ecological Representation Analysis of Conservation Zones/Protected Areas Initiatives in the April 30, 2009 Draft Sahtu Land Use Plan. [http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf)

<sup>61</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

## 6. Fort Anderson Trail Lakes (Canot Lake, Carcajou Lake, Rond Lake, Rorey Lake, Loon Lake)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	5	
<b>Area</b>	218 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	89.8%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Canot, Carcajou, Rond, Rorey and Loon Lakes are all located along the Fort Andersen Trail in the north-western corner of the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

The trail has heritage, cultural and subsistence use values. It was used for generations as one of the main routes to the barren-lands for summer and fall caribou hunting. Stories, heritage sites and named places are associated with it. A sky burial took place at Round Lake where 6 people starved to death. This is a sensitive place.

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife values include Important Wildlife Areas<sup>62</sup> for furbearers and important breeding duck habitat<sup>63</sup>. Barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, fish and moose occur. Wetlands and habitat for waterfowl and migratory birds occur. Traditional uses include berry picking, plant harvesting, waterfowl, moose and fish harvesting and furbearer trapping.

**Values to Take into account:** Outpost camps, cabins, traditional trails, firewood and log timber collection, and recreational areas. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% moderate. Existing and proposed infrastructure: MGP road.

**Additional Information:** *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>64</sup> recommended the trail be recognized as follows:

- Oral history and archaeological research to inventory, document and protect heritage resources;
- Surface protection of documented sites with commemoration of specific sites;
- Cultural revival projects (eg. walking the trail with youth and elders); and
- Special consideration in the land use planning process.

<sup>62</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>63</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>64</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

## 7. Colville Upland Lakes (Burnt Lake, Long Lake, Stink Lake, Stump Lake, Trout Lake)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	5	
<b>Area</b>	113 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	2.8%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Burnt Lake, Long Lake, Stink Lake, Stump Lake, Trout Lake are located in the north-western corner of the K'asho Got'ine District west of Colville Lake.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses. The lakes are in barren-ground caribou habitat and the Bluenose West herd occurs in the area during times of their lifecycle when they are sensitive to disturbance

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Eskers, wetlands, important breeding duck habitat<sup>65</sup>, Important Wildlife Area for furbearers, waterfowl and bird habitat and general furbearer habitat exist throughout. The zone is in barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou habitat. The Bluenose-West caribou herd has fall and winter habitat<sup>66</sup> in the zone. Furbearer, fish and barren-ground caribou harvest take place.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, log timber harvest, outpost camps and cabins recorded around Stink and Burnt Lake. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 90% moderate high; 10% moderate.

<sup>65</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.htm!>

<sup>66</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

## 8. Bela Nera Dele (Where the Wolf Crosses)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	6	
<b>Area</b>	3 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	North of Colville Lake near the border with the Inuvialuit Settlement Region. The creek is called "Bele nera dele"- "Where the wolf crosses".	

### Reason for Establishment

"Ts'oga Tué, White Muskeg Lake is made up of two large lakes joined by a creek known as Bele near dele. The area is the traditional territory of the Ts'oga Got'ine (White Muskeg People). The regional group is also known as Terahshıdet'ın (Fish Trap Place People) and Koyelée Got'ine (Fire Carrier People)."<sup>67</sup> It is an important whitefish fishery and reliable fish harvest location for winter supplies<sup>68</sup>.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Waterfowl, bird, important breeding duck habitat<sup>69</sup>, furbearer habitat including Important Wildlife Area for furbearers and barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou habitat occur. The Bluenose-West caribou herd has fall and wintering habitat<sup>70</sup> in the zone. The area consistently supports high densities of marten known for their high quality fur.<sup>71</sup> Sahtu harvesters have noted that marten are particularly numerous in the area a year or two after a burn.<sup>72</sup> Furbearers, moose, fish and barren-ground caribou are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Outpost camps, cabins, traditional trails, recreational sites, firewood and log timber collection. The Codzi Family are descendants of the traditional groups and continue to use the area. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very high. Gravel and sand deposits.

**Additional Information:** The *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>73</sup> report suggested:

- Critical Wildlife Area for whitefish;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources;
- Surface protection of documented sites;
- Special consideration in the land use planning process

<sup>67</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews. P. 70

<sup>68</sup> ibid

<sup>69</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>70</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

<sup>71</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, M.J., DRAFT Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2008, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>72</sup> ibid

<sup>73</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

## 9. Tué Sho & Dunedelatue (Aubrey Lake & Dunedelatue Lake)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	6	
<b>Area</b>	665 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	3.0%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is placed around both lakes and small areas within the lakes. The zone is located north of the community of Colville Lake.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Colville Lake requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife habitat includes: eskers, moose habitat, wetlands, waterfowl and bird habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>74</sup>, Important Wildlife Area for furbearers and fish spawning areas. Fall and wintering habitat for the Bluenose-West barren-ground caribou herd<sup>75</sup> occur in the zone. Boreal woodland caribou are also found in the zone. Waterfowl, furbearers, moose, caribou and fish are harvested. The area consistently supports high densities of marten that are known for their high quality fur.

**Values to Take into account:** Recreational areas, traditional trails, cabins, tent frames, outpost camps, log timber harvest sites and stories are associated with the area. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area. Located within Colville Lake's community drinking watershed source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 85% very high; 15% moderate high. Known mineral deposits include coal, diamonds, IOCG and related minerals and sandstone-hosted U. Gravel and sand deposits are present.

**Additional Information:** The Colville Lake Trail in the *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>76</sup> report crosses through this zone.

<sup>74</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>75</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

<sup>76</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.



## 10. Ayonik<sub>l</sub> (Maunoir Dome)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	6	
<b>Area</b>	552 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is applied to Lac Maunoir. Maunoir Dome, a large bedrock hill north of the lake is also included. North-east of the Colville Lake community.	

### Reason for Establishment

Ayonik<sub>l</sub> or Maunoir Dome is a sacred site associated with the K'asho Got'ina legend of creation. Its high cultural significance is the primary reason for protection.

The community of Colville Lake requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife habitat includes: wetlands, waterfowl and bird habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>77</sup>, general furbearer habitat and an Important Wildlife Area for furbearers<sup>78</sup>, bear habitat, boreal woodland and barren-ground caribou habitat. The area consistently supports high densities of marten known for their high quality fur.<sup>79</sup>

Maunoir Dome is an Important Wildlife Area for muskox and large numbers of muskoxen are consistently found in the area<sup>80</sup>. It is core fall and winter habitat for the Bluenose-West barren-ground caribou herd and is also used in the fall and spring. According to ENR biologists, it is one of the most reliable sites for Bluenose West caribou.

Karst features and hot/warm springs exist. Furbearers, medicinal plants, fish, caribou and waterfowl are harvested. Heritage and historic sites are documented.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, tent frames, outpost camps, recreational areas, traditional trails are located in the area. Some cabins may still be in use. It is within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 72% very high; 28% moderate.

<sup>77</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>78</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>79</sup> *ibid*

<sup>80</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

**Additional Information:** Ayonikj is the site that different peoples originated from. The K'asho Got'ina legend of creation is recounted in full in *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Place We Take Care Of*<sup>81</sup>(1999):

*In the ancient days everyone lived together – the Inuit, the Gwich'in and the Dene ... The big war that happened... was so fierce that there was a lake of blood that formed on that hill. Finally an Elder stood and asked the people to stop fighting. Everyone went their separate ways, and even the languages changed with time...*

The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of* and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>82</sup> recommend:

- National Historic Site with protection of surface and subsurface against future development;
- Management plan development carried out with community of Colville Lake.

---

<sup>81</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>82</sup> *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April-May 2001*, prepared for the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board by Jennifer Blomqvist.

<b>11. Sihoniljine (Anderson River)</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	6	
<b>Area</b>	415 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	75.5%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 1 km buffer is placed along the Anderson River as it extends from the Inuvialuit Settlement Region into the northern SSA. The Anderson Trail extends throughout the length of the river and ends at Whitefish Lake.	

### Reason for Establishment

The zone includes wetland areas and Whitefish Lake which serve as an important travel corridor, heritage place, subsistence use location and high quality habitat for a number of species. Whitefish Lake is found at the headwaters of the Anderson River and is the traditional territory for the T'ashin Got'ine. T'agaan, a narrowing section of the Anderson River was traditionally used as a camp for fishing, hunting and trapping. The zone was traditionally known as a reliable area for subsistence use and continues to be in use today.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The Anderson River area is the last known nesting area of the Eskimo curlew (*Numenius borealis*) which was listed as an Endangered Species in 2009 by COSEWIC. The zone is a migratory waterfowl staging area and a nesting area for migratory birds that use the Anderson River flyway. It also includes duck breeding habitat<sup>83</sup>, wetlands, high quality waterfowl and bird habitat. Waterfowl include geese, swans, and numerous other bird species including birds of prey.

Whitefish Lake is a cultural site. "It is a site of many ancient and recent stories as it was used as a stopover camping area for families travelling through."<sup>84</sup> "T'agan is the narrow section along the Anderson River. It is known for its richness in fish and is considered a place to find food in difficult times. Families would often camp here while the men were away hunting or trapping in the area and on the barren-lands. This area was of particular importance to the T'ashin Got'ine for subsistence."<sup>85</sup>

The lakes and streams constitute important wetlands for waterfowl, wildlife and fish. Wildlife include: barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, moose, muskox, grizzly bear, wolf, wolverine, arctic fox, marten and migratory waterfowl. Eskers are present. The Bluenose East herd is found in the zone during the post fall rut and overwinters in the area. The Bluenose West herd occupies the zone during pre-calving, late summer, the fall rut, post fall rut and over winter. It is an Important Wildlife Area for furbearers and the habitat consistently supports high densities of marten known for their high quality fur.<sup>86</sup> Sahtu harvesters have noted that marten are particularly numerous in the area a year or two after

<sup>83</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>84</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>85</sup> ibid

<sup>86</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

a burn.<sup>87</sup> Several areas are critical for fish spawning. The whitefish is known to be of high quality and trout, whitefish, inconnu, grayling, pike and walleye all occur. Medicinal plants are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Camping locations, fish traps, ancient caribou fences, outpost camps, cabins still in use today and traditional trails. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 16% very high; 60% moderate; 25% low-moderate.

**Additional Information:** The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>88</sup> (Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group, (December 1999) and/or *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>89</sup> recommended the following:

- T'agan, a narrow section of the Anderson River and Lugéwa Tué, Whitefish Lake, be given special consideration in the land use planning process;
- Caribou Protection Measures for Whitefish Lake (see GNWT 1998 in Rakekee report)
- Whitefish Lake be designated a Critical Wildlife Area for fish and waterfowl;
- Oral history and archaeological research be carried out to document and protect heritage resources;
- Protection of documented sites;
- Designate the zone a Critical Wildlife Area.

---

<sup>87</sup> ibid

<sup>88</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>89</sup> *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April-May 2001*, prepared for the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board by Jennifer Blomqvist.

<b>12. Dene Di Gon'e</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	6	
<b>Area</b>	12 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	24.4%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is applied around Dene Di Gon'e lake and a small parcel at the northern tip. It is south of Whitefish Lake in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

Dene Di Gon'e is of cultural significance. It was used as a meeting place for dance circles. Barren-ground Caribou migrate through the area and both the Bluenose West and Bluenose East herds occur in the area during the post fall rut.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou herd use the area as winter habitat. Wetlands, waterfowl and bird habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>90</sup>, boreal woodland caribou, muskox habitat and Important Wildlife Area for furbearers are found in the zone. Furbearers are harvested throughout and the area consistently supports high densities of marten known for their high quality fur.<sup>91</sup> Sahtu harvesters have noted that marten are particularly numerous in the area a year or two after a burn.<sup>92</sup>

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, camps, outposts, recreational sites, firewood and log timber collection and high concentration of traditional trails. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% moderate.

<sup>90</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>91</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>92</sup> *ibid*

## 13. Tashín Tué (Lac Des Bois)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	6	
<b>Area</b>	529 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	0.5%	5.7%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is placed around the lake. It is located to the east of the community of Colville Lake.	

### Reason for Establishment

Tashín Tué is the home territory of the Tashín Got'ine regional group and is an important community hunting, fishing and trapping area. Traditional activities, stories and place names are associated with the lake and several burial sites are known to exist.

The community of Colville Lake requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

The zone is important barren-ground caribou habitat. The Bluenose West herd is concentrated in the zone from April to May, October, and November.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife in the area include barren-ground caribou, boreal woodland caribou, furbearers, muskox, fish, waterfowl and birds. Wetlands, waterfowl and bird habitat and important breeding duck habitat<sup>93</sup> are documented. The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou herd uses the area as fall and wintering habitat<sup>94</sup>. Eskers are found around the outskirts of the zone and are known to be valuable wildlife habitat as they are prime denning areas. An Important Wildlife Area for furbearers is documented. The area consistently supports high densities of marten known for their high quality fur.<sup>95</sup> Sahtu harvesters have noted that marten are particularly numerous in the area a year or two after a burn.<sup>96</sup>

The lake itself is considered a Heritage Site. There is a Special Harvesting Area as per the *SDMCLCA* for fish. The entire zone is used for barren-ground caribou harvesting. Medicinal plants are harvested in the zone.

<sup>93</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>94</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

<sup>95</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>96</sup> *ibid*

**Values to Take into account:** Outpost camps and traditional trails. The Tashin Got'ine regional group consists of the Boucan, Oudzi, Orlias, and Gully families.<sup>97</sup> Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 48% very high; 52% moderate. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence.

**Additional Information:** During a Colville Lake meeting it was mentioned that oil and gas and tar are known to exist under the lake. There is some concern about underground seepage.

Tashín Tué is a significant site according to the *Mapping Our Future Survey*<sup>98</sup>. See the survey carried out by the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board.

The *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>99</sup> (2000) report recommends:

- Caribou Protection Measures to protect seasonal migration;
- Critical Wildlife Areas to protect fishery and marten;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect existing heritage resources and burials;
- Surface protection of documented sites.

---

<sup>97</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>98</sup> *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April-May 2001*, prepared for the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board by Jennifer Blomqvist.

<sup>99</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.



## 14. Nil̄n Tué (Lac Belot)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14; CR#19 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	6	
<b>Area</b>	415 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	91.2%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is applied around the lake and a conservation area is placed around the north-western shore. It is south of Colville Lake.	

### Reason for Establishment

Nil̄n Tué sits on a divide and is fed by precipitation. The community of Colville Lake states that it has a slow recharge rate therefore water should not be withdrawn for industrial uses such as road making. Only water to be withdrawn should be for domestic use. A legend is associated with the zone that tells of the mountain watching over the lakes for the people of the area.

The community of Colville Lake requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

The lake is important barren-ground caribou habitat, especially for the Bluenose West that concentrates in the zone from April to May, October, and November.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Nil̄n Tué is considered an important hunting and fishing area. In the spring camps are set up around the lake for subsistence use. Wetlands, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>100</sup>, general furbearer habitat and an Important Wildlife Area for furbearers are found in the zone. It consistently supports high densities of marten known for their high quality fur. Sahtu harvesters noted that marten are particularly numerous in the area a year or two after a burn.<sup>101</sup> The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou herd has fall and winter habitat in the zone. Boreal woodland caribou, moose, muskox also inhabit the zone.

Harvested wildlife species include: waterfowl, birds, furbearers, a high concentration of fish, moose, muskoxen and boreal woodland and barren-ground caribou. Ducks, beavers and muskrats are also known to be plentiful. Medicinal plants are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, cabins, outpost camps, recreational sites. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very high. Oil and gas right: exploration licence. Existing and proposed infrastructure: winter road.

<sup>100</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>101</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, M.J., DRAFT Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, February 2010, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, YK, NT

## 15. Fossil Lake

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	7	
<b>Area</b>	184 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Fossil Lake is west of the community of Fort Good Hope, across the Mackenzie River.	

### Reason for Establishment

Fossil Lake is a lake accessible by boat when water levels are at their highest. The lake is a treasured recreational and camping area and of cultural significance due to the peculiarity of its karst landscape.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The lake is located in a depression surrounded by sloping hills of karst formations. Wetlands, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat, important breeding duck<sup>102</sup> habitat, an Important Wildlife Area for moose and a CWS key migratory bird terrestrial habitat Site<sup>103</sup> are all found in the zone. Barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, bears, furbearers, moose, waterfowl and migratory birds all occur.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, camps and tent frames continue to be used by hunters, travellers and recreational visitors. Firewood and log timber collection. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 31% moderate high; 69% moderate.

<sup>102</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>103</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., CWS Occ. Paper No. 114.

<b>16. Ne'Rahten</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	7	
<b>Area</b>	7 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Also referred to as "the crossing", located off the Fort Good Hope to Colville Lake winter road where the winter road crosses the Hare Indian River.	

### Reason for Establishment

Ne'Rahten is a community gathering and cultural place where camping, fishing and traditional Dene games take place.

**Values to be Protected:** Community access to the area for gatherings and maintenance of wildlife habitat to support hunting, fishing and harvesting.

**Values to be Respected:** The Hare Indian River is an Important Wildlife Area<sup>104</sup> for moose and muskox. There is waterfowl and migratory bird habitat and important breeding duck habitat<sup>105</sup>. Bears, fish, moose, muskox are all found in the zone.

A high concentration of wildlife harvest occurs at Ne'Rahten because camps are set up for cultural gatherings. Hunters travel to Ne'Rahten because it is easily accessible in the winter and close to town. Harvested wildlife species include barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, a high concentration of moose, furbearers, fish, waterfowl and birds.

**Values to Take into account:** The "Colville Lake Trail" is the traditional trail from Fort Good Hope to Colville Lake. It crosses Ne'Rahten. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% moderate. Existing and proposed infrastructure: winter road.

<sup>104</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>105</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

## 17. Hare Indian River

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	7	
<b>Area</b>	495 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	2.4%	19.7%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 1 km buffer is applied to the main branch of the Hare Indian River. Mid-way the zone connects with the Underground River.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 1 km Special Management buffer be applied to a number of rivers and large creeks in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses. The Hare Indian River has been identified as an Important Wildlife Area<sup>106</sup> for moose and muskox.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The Hare Indian River has been identified as an Important Wildlife Area for moose, muskox and furbearers. It connects with the Underground River, a karst feature zoned for Special Management. The zone is used by barren-ground caribou such as the Bluenose West herd as fall/wintering habitat. Wetlands, eskers, important breeding duck habitat<sup>107</sup>, habitat for bears, furbearers, fish, boreal woodland caribou, waterfowl and migratory birds are also found in the zone.

Harvested species include waterfowl, furbearers, fish, moose, bears and caribou.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, recreation sites, outpost camps and cabins. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 49% very high, 26% moderate high, 12% moderate; 13% low-moderate. Granular deposits of sand are identified. Existing and proposed infrastructure: winter road.

<sup>106</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>107</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

## 18. Neyádalín (Underground River)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	7	
<b>Area</b>	309 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	2.3%	38.2%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500m buffer is applied to the river. Located south of Lac Belot and connects to the Hare Indian River.	

### Reason for Establishment

The "Legend of Neyádalín"<sup>108</sup> recounts how the people of Colville Lake came into contact with the people of Fort Good Hope. The Underground River is a karst feature. Karst is formed of soft, porous rock that erodes to form caves, sinkholes and other sensitive landforms.<sup>109</sup> Karst is sensitive to development and can be unstable. Globally, 20-25% of the population gets their drinking water from karst features. Protecting karst features can also protect drinking water quality.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Lakes and streams in the zone constitute important wetland for waterfowl, wildlife and fish. Wildlife includes barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, muskox, grizzly bear, wolf, wolverine, marten, moose, furbearers such as beaver and muskrat, fish and waterfowl. Waterfowl include geese, swans, and other bird species including birds of prey. Fish species include trout, whitefish, grayling and walleye. Important Wildlife Areas for moose and furbearers are documented. The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou herd occurs throughout the zone, primarily using it for fall/wintering habitat. There is documented important breeding duck in the zone.

This zone consistently supports high densities of marten that are known for their high quality fur.<sup>110</sup> The Colville Lake area is known to support some of the highest quality marten pelt to the fur industry. The Underground River is a karst formation.

**Values to Take into account:** In *Report Upon a Survey of Karst Landforms around Norman Wells, NWT*<sup>111</sup>, Dr. Derek Ford, a specialist in world-class karst features reported that topographic maps appear to show that Lac Belot drains underground towards Belot Ridge. Belot Ridge reaches 60-80 m in height and was identified as one of the most remarkable karst features east of the Mackenzie River. There are large karst sinkholes depicted on the topographic maps in the southwest, around the springs of the Neyádalín legend. Dr. Ford recommended further studies to delineate the course of the underground river and adjoining karst topography. He also demonstrated interest in putting this area forward for protection. Traditional trails and cabins are currently in use. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

<sup>108</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>109</sup> Information extracted from Dr. Derek Ford's "Report upon a Survey of Karst Landforms around Norman Wells, Northwest Territories" for the NWT Protected Areas Strategy, ENR, GNWT, March 2008

<sup>110</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>111</sup> "Report upon a Survey of Karst Landforms around Norman Wells, Northwest Territories" March 2008. Derek Ford, PGeo., PhD, FRSC., Professor Emeritus, Geography and Earth Sciences, McMaster University, For the NWT Protected Areas Strategy, ENR, GNWT

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very high. Existing oil and gas rights: significant discovery licence. Existing and proposed infrastructure: access roads.

**Additional Information:** The exact location of the Underground River is unknown. The Colville Lake community has a general idea of its course and is considering a GPS project to delineate it. The SLUPB has recommended that further work be done.

The "Legend of Neyádalín"<sup>112</sup> tells the story of two brothers who lived at Odarah Tue near Lac Belot. They had never been far from the Colville Lake area but one day as they were chasing waterfowl they paddled their canoes into an underground creek. They emerged from a spring in the cliffs kilometers away from their home. They continued to paddle along what was the Hare Indian River until it met up with the Mackenzie River. The brothers eventually came across the people of Fort Good Hope and realized that they spoke the same language. They lived with the Fort Good Hope group for about two years, took wives and had children. They returned to find their parents and then reunited with their families.

The complete Legend of Neyádalín is recounted in *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care of*<sup>113</sup>. The report recommends special consideration in the land use planning process.

See *Report Upon a Survey of Karst Landforms around Norman Wells, NWT*<sup>114</sup> by Dr. Derek Ford for full report.

---

<sup>112</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>113</sup> *ibid*

<sup>114</sup> "Report upon a Survey of Karst Landforms around Norman Wells, Northwest Territories" March 2008. Derek Ford, PGeo., PhD, FRSC., Professor Emeritus, Geography and Earth Sciences, McMaster University, For the NWT Protected Areas Strategy, ENR, GNWT

## 19. Bluefish Creek to Tsintu River

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	7	
<b>Area</b>	120 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 1 km buffer has been applied to Bluefish Creek beginning at its confluence with the Mackenzie River and ending at Tsintu River.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 1 km Special Management buffer be applied to a number of rivers and large creeks in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

Bluefish Creek connects the Mackenzie River to a number of small lakes that bluefish den and overwinter. The zone is intended to protect the lakes and bluefish.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** High quality wetland, habitat for moose, furbearers, fish, waterfowl, migratory birds and barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou occur. Boreal woodland caribou, furbearer and moose are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, outpost camps, recreational sites, firewood and log timber collection sites. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 25% high; 75% moderate high. Existing and proposed infrastructure: MGP proposed route, proposed Mackenzie Valley Highway route, winter road and communication lines.



<b>20. Snafu Creek</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	7	
<b>Area</b>	75 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 1 km special management buffer is applied to the shores of the creek. Also known as Sucker Creek, it is named after the sucker fish found in the lake at its eastern edge.	

### **Reason for Establishment**

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 1 km Special Management buffer be applied to a number of rivers and large creeks in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

Snafu Creek is sucker fish habitat. The sucker fish are harvested for subsistence use and the zone is a recreation area.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Fish habitat sites occur. Important breeding duck habitat<sup>115</sup> and significant habitat for waterfowl are located within the zone. Other wildlife species include moose, furbearers, bears and caribou.

Harvested wildlife species include sucker and other fish, a high concentration of furbearers, moose, some bears and boreal woodland and barren-ground caribou.

**Values to Take into account:** Recreation areas. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 27% high; 73% moderate high.

<sup>115</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

## 21. Nōfee K'ōdah Tué (Lac a Jacques)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	7	
<b>Area</b>	123 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is applied around the lake. It is located north of the Norman Range in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

Nōfee K'ōdah Tué is an important heritage and subsistence use location. Hunting, trapping, fishing and recreational uses take place in high concentration around the lake. A number of burial sites are also located around the lake.

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Important Wildlife Areas<sup>116</sup> for furbearers, moose and muskox, important fish, wildlife and waterfowl habitats, important breeding duck habitat<sup>117</sup> and boreal woodland and barren-ground caribou habitat<sup>118</sup> are all found in the zone. Moose concentrations around the wetlands are high all year-round<sup>119</sup>. Wetlands are known for their beaver concentrations and have been documented as being "intermediate quality" to "very critical habitat" for beaver<sup>120</sup>.

Waterfowl, birds, furbearers, fish, moose and barren-ground caribou are all harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, tent frames, camp and outpost sites, recreation sites, significant subsistence use trails, cultural/historic sites, firewood and log timber harvest sites. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 2% very high; 98% moderate high.

<sup>116</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>117</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>118</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

<sup>119</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>120</sup> ibid

## 22. Arakíe Tué (Horton Lake)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	1,178 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	8.6%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 10 km buffer around the lake and some small bodies of water. It is North-east of the community of Colville Lake and north the Great Bear Lake Watershed.	

### Reason for Establishment

Arakíe Tué is important for hunting, fishing, trapping and the gathering of plants and berries. The zone is intended to manage for long-term continued harvest of barren-ground caribou. Déljine elders recount that families would boat on up to Neregah, the North Shore and hunt on Horton Lake. Today it is used in the late summer/fall by the K'asho Got'ine people of Colville Lake and at times Fort Good Hope as a caribou harvesting area. People return each year for community hunts where history, values and land based skills are taught to younger generations. Caribou corrals are located near the lake indicating that localized caribou harvest has been practiced for many years.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The entire zone is an Important Wildlife Area<sup>121</sup> for barren-ground caribou. The Bluenose East herd inhabit the zone from late summer to mid-fall (August to October). The Bluenose West herd inhabit the zone during the fall rut and winter<sup>122</sup>.

The zone is a very important place for wildlife in general including barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, muskox, grizzly bear, wolf, wolverine, arctic fox, marten, fish, waterfowl and migratory birds. The treeline serves as the interface for caribou, muskox, wolf and wolverine hunting. Bull caribou have been documented to stay within the treeline during the fall migration.<sup>123</sup>

Wildlife habitat includes wetlands, eskers which make prime denning areas, a large area of wolf denning habitat, general muskox habitat, Important Wildlife Areas<sup>124</sup> for muskox and furbearers. Berry and plant harvesting sites also occur.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, camping sites, cabins, old corals for hunting caribou. Within the Fort Good Hope/Coville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 93% moderate;7% low to moderate. Existing and proposed infrastructure: airstrip. The District of Déljine holds both surface and subsurface title to lands around Horton Lake. The SMZ should allow for future economic development.

<sup>121</sup> ibid

<sup>122</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

<sup>123</sup> ibid

<sup>124</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., *Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012*, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<b>23. Sahtu (Great Bear Lake Watershed - GBLW)</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-13; CRs# 15-17 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	68,824 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	0.5%	7.8%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	The Great Bear Lake Watershed (GBLW) SMZ encompasses the lake and the entire watershed in the SSA, including land around it and under it that is not protected through other zones or initiatives. The zone is located in the Délı̄ne District.	

### Reason for Establishment

"The GBLW is the foundation of Sahtugot'ine cosmology, history and traditional law, of the transmission of the culture from elders to the younger generation, and of Délı̄ne's renewable resource economy. The land "contains" the people of Délı̄ne; they are part of it, and they define themselves largely by their relationship with it. For these reasons, the watershed, the land, the home of the people of Délı̄ne must be kept healthy. The special management of the watershed is one way to ensure this."<sup>125</sup>

Of primary concern to the community of Délı̄ne are the protection of their cultural integrity and the protection of the Great Bear Lake and its Watershed's ecological integrity as the former is intricately linked with the latter. For greater detail on the lake's significance see "The Water Heart".<sup>126</sup>

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** As the Sahtugot'ine culture is intricately tied to the health of the lake, its watershed and the animals that inhabit the watershed, the maintenance of Great Bear Lake and its Watershed's ecological integrity is of primary concern to the people of Délı̄ne.

GBL's low productivity, low inflows of nutrients from surrounding areas and simple food web suggest a vulnerability to disturbance activities and a potentially slow recovery.<sup>127</sup> The GBL food web is relatively simple with benthic (bottom dwelling) invertebrates as an important food source for fish species.<sup>128</sup>

The diverse ecoregions of the Great Bear Lake Watershed (GBLW) provide habitat for a wide range of terrestrial plant and animal species. Habitat and wildlife include:

- Three important herds of barren-ground caribou: Bathurst herd, Bluenose-West and the Bluenose-East herds. The GBLW is fall and wintering habitat for both the Bluenose East and West herds. It is also Important Wildlife Area for barren-ground caribou. The Bluenose-East herd is of particular value to the SSA and in particular to the community of Délı̄ne<sup>129</sup>.

<sup>125</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>126</sup> ibid

<sup>127</sup> ibid

<sup>128</sup> ibid

<sup>129</sup> ibid

- Muskox habitat in its natural range and three Important Wildlife Areas<sup>130</sup> for muskox
- Eskers and habitat for denning wolves, wolverines, arctic fox, red fox and bears, particularly grizzly bears
- General moose habitat and Important Wildlife Area for moose
- Boreal woodland caribou habitat
- Furbearer habitat and Important Wildlife Areas<sup>131</sup> for furbearers
- General waterfowl habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>132</sup>, important habitat for waterfowl and shorebirds including breeding and nesting habitats.

May-be at risk plants, International Biological Programme sites<sup>133</sup> and karst features are documented in the zone.

A variety of wildlife is harvested: waterfowl, moose, fish, barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou and furbearers. GBL's subsistence fishery is very important. Although a variety of fish are caught, lake trout is the most heavily-harvested. Lake cisco and whitefish also form a significant component of the subsistence fishery.<sup>134</sup> Special Harvesting Areas as per the *SDMCLCA* for fish, moose, waterfowl and birds are also found in the zone.

**Values to Take into account:** Yamoria and the Giant Beavers is a trail of particular significance. It is the trail that Yamoria took when he chased the Giant Beavers from the Sahtu, killing them and forever saving the people from future attacks. The GBLW is part of Déłıne's community drinking water source catchment. A small portion of the zone lies within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 21% moderate high; 24% moderate; 19% low-moderate. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence. Known mineralization: Coal, Diamonds, IOCG and Related, Sandstone-hosted U, Unclassified. Mineral rights: lease. Gravel and sand deposits. Potential hydroelectric site identified. In an outfitter region with active businesses.

**Additional Information:** See "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed for full zone details.<sup>135</sup>

#### **ELDERS' TEACHING: The Water Heart<sup>136</sup>**

*The elders of Déłıne have passed down a story through many generations. In times past, their spiritual teachers were often "mystically tied" to different parts of the environment: some to the caribou, some the wolf, some the northern lights and some the willow.*

*Kayé Daoyé was one such person. He lived all around Great Bear Lake or "Sahtu" in the Slavey language, but made his home primarily in Edajıla (the Caribou Point area), on the northeast shores of the Lake. Kayé Daoyé was mystically tied to the loche.*

<sup>130</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>131</sup> ibid

<sup>132</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>133</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>134</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>135</sup> ibid

<sup>136</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A Management Plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt. P. 27 of 104

*One day, after setting four hooks, he found one of them missing. This disturbed him — in those days hooks were rare and very valuable — and that night he traveled in his dreams with the loche in search of the fish that had taken his hook. As he traveled through the centre of GBL he became aware of a great power in the lake - the heart of the lake or the "water heart". Contemplating this heart, he became aware that it is connected to all beings — the land, the sky, plants, other creatures, people — and that it helps sustain the entire watershed of GBL.*

-----

*The elders of Déljne stress that the interconnectedness of all things includes all people — Dene and non-Dene alike. From this "universal law" of the interconnectedness of things flows the responsibility of people to care for the world in which we live. The water heart sustains the watershed of GBL and we in turn have a responsibility to sustain it. We do this by treating it and other beings with the utmost respect.<sup>137</sup>*

-----

*The elders see the GBLW as one organism. They see the many rivers, streams and creeks that flow into and out of GBL as fulfilling the same functions as the veins, capillaries and arteries in the bodies of all creatures. Water unites and flows through and among all creatures. It plays an essential role both in the larger ecosystem and in the smaller ecosystems that comprise each creature. The maintenance of water quality in the GBLW is as essential as the maintenance of the quality of the blood of any person or other creature.*

*The elders assert that the health of people and the land are directly connected — and that people are not in reality separate from the land and other creatures. Our "minds", "souls" and "hearts" are directly tied to the health of the land. The use that we make of the land and other creatures — and the respect with which we treat them — will have a direct bearing on the health not only of ourselves but also of all aspects of the land.*

*If we do not support the land, give it strength and treat it with utmost respect, the heart of Sahtu will not survive. The GBLW is a special place for the people of Déljne. Their ancestors have been part of and have cared for this place for countless generations. The elders assert that we in turn have a responsibility to treat this watershed with respect — to keep it alive. They want to protect it so that it can be used by the present generation and by future generations.<sup>138</sup>*

-----

Hydrology: (for full section see GBLWMP)

The lake has a relatively small drainage basin in relation to its area, a low water replacement rate, and a relatively long water residence time (124 years).

GBL has very little stratification or variation in temperature, surface to bottom, and the lake is thus able to "turn over" or mix waters relatively easily.

GBL has very clear, transparent waters (maximum recorded Secchi depth 30 m). This is related to its low productivity. GBL's standing crops of phytoplankton and zooplankton (microscopic plants and animals) are among the lowest found in freshwater systems and mainland lakes in North America.

---

<sup>137</sup> *ibid*

<sup>138</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

GBL is the last of the Great Lakes to contain a wide diversity of “morphotypes” or different forms of lake trout. Morphological and genetic diversity allow populations to better adapt to environmental changes over the long term. This diversity has been extinguished or greatly reduced in the other Great Lakes due to over-harvesting and the introduction of non-native species. GBL provides one of the only remaining areas to study how lake trout populations naturally function in a large lake ecosystem.<sup>139</sup>

A number of areas listed in *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places we take care of*<sup>140</sup>, lie in the GBLW: Johnny Hoe Fishery, Caribou Point, Fort Confidence.

---

<sup>139</sup> *ibid*

<sup>140</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.



## 24. Neregah (Northshore)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-13; CR# 15-16 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	5,913 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	38.6%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Neregah is located on the north shore of Great Bear Lake.	

### Reason for Establishment

The Sahtugot'ine (People of Great Bear Lake) have used Neregah for centuries. Neregah was established as a separate zone from the GBLW because the Deline community is primarily concerned with the preservation of its heritage values such as heritage areas, cultural sites, archaeological sites and artifacts. The community insists that greater patrolling is needed to protect heritage features.<sup>141</sup>

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Heritage features include traditional trails, landmarks, cabins, camping sites, cultural sites and gathering places.

According to the elders of Déljne, Neregah is productive habitat and important to the life cycles of a range of wildlife species.<sup>142</sup> Species include: barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, moose, grizzly bear, muskox, fox species, beaver, marten, mink, muskrat, lynx, wolverine, arctic hare, wolf, waterfowl and fish, including lake trout, herring and whitefish.<sup>143</sup>

Wildlife habitat includes: general muskox habitat<sup>144</sup> including two Important Wildlife Areas<sup>145</sup> for furbearers and muskox, wetlands, waterfowl habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>146</sup> and barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou habitat.<sup>147</sup> Both the Bluenose East and West barren-ground caribou herds inhabit the area.

Neregah is important for hunting, fishing, trapping of the species listed above and for plant and berry gathering. It includes natural harbours which allow safe moorage of boats and includes several productive fisheries.<sup>148</sup> It is also used for summer hunting of ungulates<sup>149</sup>. A Special Harvesting Area (as per *SDMCLCA*) for fish is found in the zone. A rare or potentially at risk plant species, *Arabis caldera* is documented.<sup>150</sup>

<sup>141</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>142</sup> *ibid*

<sup>143</sup> *ibid*

<sup>144</sup> SLUPB-RWED Wildlife Mapping Project

<sup>145</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT, muskox

<sup>146</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>147</sup> SLUPB-RWED Wildlife Mapping Project

<sup>148</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>149</sup> *ibid*

<sup>150</sup> Northwest Territories Protected Areas Strategy Science Team. (August 6, 2009). Ecological Representation Analysis of Conservation Zones/Protected Areas Initiatives in the April 30, 2009 Draft Sahtu Land Use Plan.

Culturally speaking, many stories are associated with Neregah. It was an important place for ancient contacts with Inuit venturing inland.<sup>151</sup> It continues to be used for educational trips involving Déljine elders and school-aged children in the spring and summer. It is used to teach Sahtugot'ine legends, history, values, law and land based skills.<sup>152</sup>

**Values to Take into account:** Log timber harvest. Within Deline community's drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 23% moderate high; 31% moderate; 20% low-moderate.

**Additional Information:** See "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed for full zone details.<sup>153</sup>

*Rakekee Goke Godi: Places we take care of*<sup>154</sup> recommended surface protection and oral history and archaeological research to document and protect extant heritage resources. It also recommended designating Neregah a Critical Wildlife Area for caribou and muskox.

---

<sup>151</sup> *ibid*

<sup>152</sup> *ibid*

<sup>153</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>154</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<b>25. Du K'ets'edi SMZ (Sentinel Islands SMZ)</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-13; CR# 15-16 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	325 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	99.7%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	The Du K'ets'edi ("the islands taking care of themselves") SMZ refers to all Sentinel Islands in the GBLW that are part of the Settlement Lands held by the District of Deline.	

### Reason for Establishment

The Sahtugot'ine consider many Du K'ets'Edi to have mythical significance and to have been formed when mythical beings turned into islands when crossing GBL. Du K'ets'Edi have many stories associated with them. Some islands are sacred and best left alone. Others require special acts of respect when passing them. Some are considered still to have supernatural powers.<sup>155</sup>

The islands were used primarily for safety purposes when traveling on GBL (storms, docking and temporary use year round, particularly during the open water season). The Special Management of the Du K'ets'Edi SMZ islands is primarily to protect the water quality of GBL while allowing for economic development.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological, burial and cultural sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Du K'ets'Edi are used as traditional knowledge education places. Some of the Sahtugot'ine creation stories are told in these locations.<sup>156</sup>

A number of wildlife species are harvested on the islands: moose, fish, furbearers and barren-ground caribou. Waterfowl, migratory birds and boreal woodland caribou are also found on the islands. The Bluenose East barren-ground caribou herd use the zone as fall and wintering habitat from October to March. Important Wildlife Area for furbearers are located on the islands. An International Biological Programme<sup>157</sup> site, wetlands, important breeding duck habitat<sup>158</sup> and a Special Harvesting Area<sup>159</sup> for fish as per the *SDMCLCA* are located on the islands.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, log timber harvest

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 17% moderate high. Known mineralization: IOCG and Related, Unclassified.

<sup>155</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>156</sup> *ibid*

<sup>157</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>158</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>159</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

**Additional Information:** See “The Water Heart”: A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed for full zone details.<sup>160</sup>

---

<sup>160</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. “The Water Heart”: A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

## 26. Du K'ets'edi CZ (Sentinel Islands CZ)

Designation	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-16; CR#18 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	251 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	The Du K'ets'edi ("the islands taking care of themselves") CZ refers to all Sentinel Islands in the GBLW that are on Crown land.	

### Reason for Establishment

The Sahtugot'ine consider many Du K'ets'Edi to have mythical significance and to have been formed when mythical beings turned into islands when crossing GBL. Du K'ets'Edi have many stories associated with them. Some islands are sacred and best left alone. Others require special acts of respect when passing them. Some are considered still to have supernatural powers.<sup>161</sup> The islands are protected for different reasons.

The islands were used primarily for safety purposes when traveling on GBL (storms, docking and temporary use year round, particularly during the open water season). The Conservation status of the Du K'ets'Edi SMZ islands is primarily to protect the water quality of GBL and to protect the spiritual and heritage values.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological, burial and cultural sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Du K'ets'Edi are used as traditional knowledge education places. Some of the Sahtugot'ine creation stories are told in these locations.<sup>162</sup>

Waterfowl, migratory birds and muskox are found on the islands. An Important Wildlife Areas for furbearers and barren-ground caribou are located on the islands. The Bluenose East barren-ground caribou herd use the zone as fall and wintering habitat from October to March. Boreal woodland caribou are also found in the zone. A number of wildlife species are harvested on the islands: moose, fish, furbearers and barren-ground caribou.

An IBP<sup>163</sup> site, wetlands, important breeding duck habitat<sup>164</sup> and a Special Harvesting Area<sup>165</sup> for fish as per the *SDMCLCA* are located on the islands.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, log timber harvest.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 12% low-moderate. Known mineralization: IOCG and Related, Unclassified. Mineral rights: lease.

<sup>161</sup> *ibid*

<sup>162</sup> *ibid*

<sup>163</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>164</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>165</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT



**Additional Information:** See "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed for full zone details.<sup>166</sup>

---

<sup>166</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

## 27. Edaíila (Caribou Point)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-16 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	8,775 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	13.5%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Edaíila is located in the north-eastern part of the Great Bear Lake Watershed (GBLW). It encompass all of Caribou Point, several associated islands, T'echo cho deh t'a tlaaa (Fort Confidence - approx 86 km <sup>2</sup> ), the lower reaches of the Dease River and a small part of Ritch Island. <sup>167</sup>	

### Reason for Establishment

Edaíila provides important habitat for a number of wildlife species but the primary reason for its conservation status is to protect the Bluenose-East barren-ground caribou herd. The herd regularly aggregates on and close to the zone from mid-July to mid-October. Edaíila is an extremely important cultural and ecological area for the people of Délı̄ne. Residents throughout the NWT and the western parts of Nunavut depend economically, socially and culturally on Bluenose-East and Bluenose-West caribou herds.

Edaíila is a spiritual place with many stories. It is part of the Sahtugot'ı̄ne cosmology, history, values and law. It is considered a place of very strong medicine power.<sup>168</sup>

**Values to be Protected:** Caribou Point Heritage Area and Fort Confidence Heritage Area are both located in the zone as are archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** According to the elders of Délı̄ne, Edaíila contains productive wildlife habitat and is important in the life cycles of a wide range of species including: barren-ground caribou (the Bluenose-East and West herds), boreal woodland caribou, moose, grizzly bears, black bears, muskoxen, fox, beavers, marten, mink, muskrats, lynx, wolverines, arctic hares, ground hogs and wolves.<sup>169</sup> It is important for waterfowl, migratory birds and fish species, including lake trout, herring, pike, grayling, whitefish and "jumbo" whitefish.<sup>170</sup> Important Wildlife Areas for furbearers and barren-ground caribou are located in the zone.

Habitat of interest include: eskers, wetlands, important breeding duck sites<sup>171</sup>, general furbearer habitat and Important Wildlife Areas<sup>172</sup> for furbearers, marten and barren-ground caribou as well as general caribou habitat.

<sup>167</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>168</sup> ibid

<sup>169</sup> ibid

<sup>170</sup> ibid

<sup>171</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>172</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

ENR research confirms that the Bluenose-East barren-ground caribou herd regularly aggregates in or close to Edaííla during the mid-July to mid-October period. The herd inhabits the zone during the rut, fall migration, over winter and spring migration/pre-calving. The Bluenose-West barren-ground caribou herd occur in the fall rut.<sup>173</sup>

Edaííla continues to be important to the Sahtugot'ine for hunting fishing and trapping of the above species and for plant and berry gathering. It is particularly important for summer caribou hunting. It is considered to an emergency fishing area because some areas remain ice-free year-round.<sup>174</sup> There is a Special Harvesting Area as per the *SDMCLCA* for fish.

International Biological Programme Sites include: Caribou Point – Site 18, Cape MacDonald – Site 18, Melville Creek – Site 18 and Fort Confidence – Site 18.<sup>175</sup>

Edaííla has been used by the Sahtugot'ine for centuries and preserves much physical heritage: caribou herding fences, quarries for the making of stone tools, an old mission, river crossings, sites of contact between the Sahtugot'ine and the Copper Inuit and the implements associated with all of the above. T'echo cho deh t'a tlaaa (Fort Confidence) and the remnants of explorations and dwellings of Franklin, Dease, Simpson, Hornby, D'arcy and others remain.<sup>176</sup>

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, camping sites, cabins, gathering places.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very low. Known mineralization: IOCG and Related, Sandstone-hosted U, Unclassified. Located in an outfitting region. Existing infrastructure: airstrip.

**Additional Information:** See "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed for full zone details.<sup>177</sup>

*Rakekee Goke Godi: Places we take care of*<sup>178</sup> recommended:

- designating Edaííla as a Critical Wildlife Area to protect caribou, while permitting access to local hunters
- oral history and archaeological research to document and protect extant heritage resources, and
- that the surface of documented sites be protected, with commemoration of specific sites to be negotiated following completion of the inventory.

---

<sup>173</sup> Nagy, J.A, Wright, W.H, Slack, T.M, and Veitch, A.M. 2005. Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories

<sup>174</sup> *ibid*

<sup>175</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>176</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>177</sup> *ibid*

<sup>178</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

## 28. Turatlin Tué (Tunago Lake)

Designation	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	119 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	0.3%	99.7%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500m buffer is applied around the lake. It lies within the GBLW Special Management Zone, 2/3 in the K'asho Got'ine and 1/3 in the Déline District.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Colville Lake requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

Tunago Lake and area provides important habitat for the Bluenose-West barren-ground caribou herd, particularly during the fall rut through to late winter.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife and habitat includes: wetlands, muskox habitat, fish such as trout and whitefish, waterfowl and bird habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>179</sup>, barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou habitat. General furbearer habitat and an Important Wildlife Area for furbearers<sup>180</sup> consistently supports high densities of marten known for their high quality fur.<sup>181</sup> Sahtu harvesters have noted that marten are particularly numerous in the area a year or two after a burn.<sup>182</sup> The Bluenose West caribou herd uses the zone as fall and wintering habitat.<sup>183</sup>

Hunting, fishing and trapping take place all year. Medicinal plants are harvested. Harvested species include: waterfowl and birds, fish, barren-ground caribou, moose-hunting in summer.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, cabins, outpost camps. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area. Within Deline's community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very high.

<sup>179</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>180</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>181</sup> ibid

<sup>182</sup> ibid

<sup>183</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

<b>29. Clement Lake</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	6 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Clement Lake is located in the Deline District along the Deline/Tulita Districts boundary line. A 500m buffer is applied to the shoreline.	

### **Reason for Establishment**

Clement Lake is located in the Deline District but the zone was created upon request from the Tulita District and with Deline's support. Clement Lake is used by both communities primarily as a fish lake and for trapping. A 500m buffer was applied to the lakeshore. The intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife and habitat include: barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, fish, moose, waterfowl, furbearers, migratory birds and important breeding duck habitat<sup>184</sup>. Barren-ground caribou use the zone for fall and over-wintering.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, camps or outposts. Within Deline's community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% low-moderate.

---

<sup>184</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>



## 30. Luchaniline (Whitefish River)

Designation	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14; CR# 15-16 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	1,443 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	0.03%	81.9%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Luchaniline is located in the Great Bear Lake Watershed (GBLW). A 10km buffer is applied to the river. Its boundaries include all of Whitefish River and the downstream reaches of the River's watershed.	

### Reason for Establishment

Luchaniline is widely recognized as a critical whitefish spawning area.<sup>185</sup> According to the elders of Délı̄ne it is productive wildlife habitat that is important to the life cycles of a wide range of species.<sup>186</sup> Culturally, it is a place for spiritual renewal and is associated with many stories. The Sahtugot'ine have used Luchaniline for centuries. It preserves much physical heritage and continues to be used for educational trips involving Délı̄ne elders and school-aged children in the spring and summer, and for the teaching of the Sahtugot'ine legends, history, values, law and land based skills.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Luchaniline is widely recognized as a critical whitefish spawning area. Whitefish are found throughout the length of the river.<sup>187</sup>

Délı̄ne elders consider Luchaniline to be productive habitat for many species including: beaver, muskrat, mink, marten, otter, black and grizzly bear, moose, boreal woodland caribou, whitefish, jackfish, loche, grayling, sucker and geese, waterfowl and other migratory bird species. Important Wildlife Areas<sup>188</sup> for muskox and furbearers, important breeding duck habitat<sup>189</sup>, eskers, wetlands and waterfowl and migratory bird habitat are also found in the zone. Elders assert that wildlife using Luchaniline need to be treated with respect and not be unnecessarily disturbed.

Residents throughout the NWT and in the western parts of Nunavut depend economically, socially and culturally on Bluenose-East and Bluenose-West barren-ground caribou herds. Luchaniline is important rut, fall migration, wintering and spring migration habitat for the Bluenose-West herd.<sup>190</sup> Both herds use the zone as fall and wintering habitat. Quality boreal woodland caribou habitat is also found in the zone.

Hunting, fishing, trapping and plant and berry gathering all take place in the zone. Harvested wildlife includes: waterfowl, moose, barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou, a high concentration of furbearers and fish. Special Harvesting Areas for fish and waterfowl and birds as per the *SDMCLCA* exist.

<sup>185</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>186</sup> *ibid*

<sup>187</sup> *ibid*

<sup>188</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>189</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>190</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

**Values to Take into account:** Extensive traditional trails, cabins, camping sites, river crossings, log timber harvest sites. It is part of Deline's community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 49% high; 51% moderate high.

**Additional Information:** See "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed for full zone details.<sup>191</sup>

*Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places we take care of*<sup>192</sup> recommended:

- surface protection and oral history
- archaeological research to document and protect extant heritage resources
- Heritage River designation
- the area be given special consideration in planning and
- that it be designated a Critical Wildlife Area to protect the whitefish spawning grounds.

---

<sup>191</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>192</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

## 31. Tehkaicho Dé (Johnny Hoe River)

Designation	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-16 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	4,141 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	25.8%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located in the south-western part of the Great Bear Lake Watershed (GBLW) includes Lac Ste-Therese, Birch Lake and a significant part of the Johnny Hoe River watershed.	

### Reason for Establishment

According to the elders of Déljine, Tehkaicho Dé is productive wildlife habitat that is important to the life cycles of a wide range of species. It is a critical whitefish spawning area.<sup>193</sup> The zone lies along the Bluenose East herd migration path. Elders believe Tehkaicho Dé to be one of the most important places around GBL that was used by their ancestors and one of the most important for their ancestors' survival. Culturally, it is a place for spiritual renewal and is associated with many stories. Tehkaicho Dé is considered by elders to be a very powerful area. It preserves much physical heritage and continues to be used for educational trips involving Déljine elders and school-aged children in the spring and summer, and for the teaching of the Sahtugot'ine legends, history, values, law and land based skills.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Tehkaicho Dé is widely recognized as a critical whitefish spawning area. Whitefish are found throughout the length of the river.<sup>194</sup> According to the elders of Déljine, Tehkaicho Dé is productive habitat for many species including: beaver, muskrat, caribou, moose, black bear, whitefish, broad whitefish, geese, waterfowl and other migratory bird species.<sup>195</sup>

Habitat of interest includes: extensive furbearer habitat, Important Wildlife Areas<sup>196</sup> for furbearers and moose, important breeding duck habitats<sup>197</sup>, eskers, wetlands, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat. The Bluenose-East barren-ground caribou migrate through this area and have fall and winter habitat within the zone.<sup>198</sup> Boreal woodland caribou also occur.

It is important for hunting, fishing, trapping and the gathering of a variety of plants and berries. Although the fish in Lac Ste-Therese have been found to be contaminated by naturally high sources of mercury the area continues to be used for harvest. Harvested species include: waterfowl, moose, fish, barren-ground caribou, berries and plants. A Special Harvesting Area for fish as per *SDMCLCA* exists.

<sup>193</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>194</sup> *ibid*

<sup>195</sup> *ibid*

<sup>196</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT, furbearers

<sup>197</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>198</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

It is associated with many stories and is used by Délı̄ne residents for spiritual renewal. It continues to be used for educational trips involving Délı̄ne elders and high school children, and for the teaching of the Sahtugot'ine legends, history, values, law and land based skills.<sup>199</sup>

**Values to Take into account:** Extensive traditional trails such as the historic portage across the neck of Sahyoue, hundreds of camping sites, cabins, recreational/gathering places and log timber harvest sites.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 58% moderate; 41% low-moderate. Sand deposits are identified.

**Additional Information:** See "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed for full zone details.<sup>200</sup>

*Rakekee Goke Godi: Places we take care of*<sup>201</sup> recommended:

- surface protection
- oral history and archaeological research to document and protect extant heritage resources
- the area be given special consideration during land use planning and
- designating Tehkaicho Dé as a Critical Wildlife Area for fish and moose.

---

<sup>199</sup> Great Bear Lake Working Group. May 31, 2005. "The Water Heart": A management plan for Great Bear Lake and its Watershed. Directed by the Great Bear Lake Working Group and facilitated and drafted by Tom Nesbitt.

<sup>200</sup> *ibid*

<sup>201</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

## 32. Petini?ah (Bear Rock)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	9	
<b>Area</b>	33 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	96.3%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Petini?ah lies within the Mackenzie River Special Management Zone across from Tulita at the confluence of the Mackenzie and Great Bear Rivers.	

### Reason for Establishment

Petini?ah is one of the most important sacred sites in Denendeh. It is of cultural value to Dene groups within and outside of the Sahtu. It is the location of a well-known story about Yamoria, a legendary hero who made the land safe for the Dene by chasing away and killing giant beavers that were causing them harm.

**Values to be Protected:** Petini?ah commonly known as Bear Rock, is a large karst formation across from the community of Tulita. The mountain is one of the most sacred sites for the Dene living in and outside of the Sahtu. Archaeological sites are known to exist.

**Values to be Respected:** Species and habitat in the zone include: waterfowl and migratory bird habitat including nesting area for raptors, important breeding duck habitat<sup>202</sup>, a CWS key migratory bird terrestrial habitat site<sup>203</sup>, Important Wildlife Area for moose, furbearer habitat, boreal woodland caribou and bears.

The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) has identified all three Important Bird Areas (IBA) as key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the NWT. These IBAs represent important breeding habitat for globally and continentally significant concentrations of several species. The Lower Mackenzie River Islands IBA, a globally significant site, is a major stopover along the Western Central Flyway, hosting as many as 112,800 waterfowl and most of the Western Central Flyway population of Snow Geese (estimated to be half a million) in spring.<sup>204</sup>

Moose, furbearers and fish are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails. Within Tulita's community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 89% moderate high and 10% moderate. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence. Existing and proposed infrastructure: winter road and proposed Mackenzie Valley Highway route.

<sup>202</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>203</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., CWS Occ. Paper No. 114.

<sup>204</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010: [http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)



**Additional Information:** For more details on Important Bird Areas see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

The story of Yamoria and the Three Beavers tells us that: Many years ago before white men came to this part of the country a special man by the name of Yamoria travelled the land and put everything into its rightful place. By doing so he set laws for the people to follow. When Yamoria learned that giant beavers living in Great Bear Lake were causing harm to people, he chased them away and at the confluence of Great Bear River and the Mackenzie River, he killed 3 giant beavers and stretched and nailed their hides on Bear Rock where they can still be seen today. He also shot two arrows at the confluence of the two rivers where two big poles remain.<sup>205</sup>

As recounted in a Dene Nation publication, "the symbol of the three beaver pelts on Bear Rock are signs of the land set there as a reminder of the teachings of the legends. If we take the signs set on the land for us as our symbol, we will never have any trouble surviving as a nation."<sup>206</sup>

The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>207</sup> (Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group, (December 1999) and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>208</sup> recommended:

- National Historic Site designation with surface and subsurface protection;
- Reviving proposal to commemorate Bear Rock a National Historic Sites in consultation with Tulita residents.

A Phase 1 Ecological Assessment, Phase 1 Cultural Evaluation Summary and Hydrocarbon Assessment were completed in 2007 as a part of the NWT Protected Areas Strategy process. Readers are referred to these reports for additional information.<sup>209</sup> Tulita was unsuccessful in its attempt to secure a sponsoring agency for a number of cultural and sacred sites known as the Tulita Conservation Initiative. The community and its elders remain committed to protecting these areas through the Plan.

---

<sup>205</sup> Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of, Report of the Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group, December 1999

<sup>206</sup> ibid

<sup>207</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>208</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

<sup>209</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-tci.asp>

### 33. Sahtu Deh (Great Bear River)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	9	
<b>Area</b>	908 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	54.9%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Lies within both the Tulita and Deline Districts. Begins at the south-eastern end of Great Bear Lake at Dareli (Keith Arm) and joins the Mackenzie River.	

#### Reason for Establishment

Great Bear River is a heritage place, recreation and subsistence use location for the communities of Déline and Tulita. It is an important travel corridor between the Mackenzie River and Great Bear Lake, hunting and fishing location, the location of potential hydroelectric development sites and along the winter road to Deline.

Community concerns are the protection of water quality for drinking and fishing, riparian habitat/shoreline health and continued access for recreational and subsistence use.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The Bluenose-East barren-ground caribou herd have fall and winter habitat in the zone<sup>210</sup>. Boreal woodland caribou also inhabit the zone. Important breeding duck habitat<sup>211</sup>, a CWS key migratory bird terrestrial habitat site, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat, furbearer, muskox and moose habitat, karst features, wetlands, an International Biological Programme<sup>212</sup> site and an Important Wildlife Area for furbearers all occur.

The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) has identified all three IBAs as key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the NWT. These IBAs represent important breeding habitat for globally and continentally significant concentrations of several species. Brackett Lake IBA is continentally significant and provides excellent breeding habitat for ducks and is used by approximately two percent of the Canadian White-fronted Goose population.<sup>213</sup>

Harvested wildlife include: waterfowl, birds, barren-ground caribou, a high concentration of furbearers, fish and moose. Plants and berries are also harvested. Special Harvesting Areas as per the *SDMCLCA* for fish, waterfowl, birds and moose exist.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, outpost camps, tent frames, camp sites, a Heritage Trail from Tulita to Déline and across Great Bear Lake, traditional trails, recreation sites, timber log harvest sites. Within the Tulita community drinking water source catchment.

<sup>210</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

<sup>211</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>212</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>213</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010:

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 76% high; 18% moderate high. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence. Multiple hydroelectric potential sites. Existing infrastructure: winter road and airstrip.

**Additional Information:** For details on Important Bird Areas see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

Bennett Field is located mid-river, on the southern shore. It is where uranium from Great Bear Lake was moved to barges for transportation. A number of cabins and tent frames remain. During WWII an airstrip was constructed and used. Buildings were built and used by military personnel concurrent with activities on the Canol Trail near Norman Wells and Port Radium on Great Bear Lake.

The reports *Rakekée Gok'è Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>214</sup> (Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group, (December 1999) and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>215</sup> recommend that the following be undertaken:

- Heritage River designation
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect existing heritage resources and burial sites
- Protection of the surface of documented sites.

---

<sup>214</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'è Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>215</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

## 34. Mackay, Rusty and Yellow Lakes

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	9	
<b>Area</b>	18 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is applied around Mackay (34A), Rusty (34B) and Yellow (34C) Lakes. They lie south of Tulita, west of the Mackenzie River.	

### Reason for Establishment

Tulita identified Mackay and Rusty lakes as important fish lakes which allowed people to survive during extreme weather and when hunting was difficult. Community concerns are the protection of water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, continued access for recreational and subsistence use and the health of the fish populations upon which people have depended for a long time.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Moose, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat, furbearers and boreal woodland caribou occur throughout. The Mackay Range has a high density of peregrine falcon nest sites<sup>216</sup>. Rusty Lake is a raptor nest site and area. Mackay and Rusty lakes are made up of karst features. Fish harvest takes place on Mackay and Rusty Lakes. Berry and plant harvesting areas are recorded.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails (the Mountain Dene Trail to the Mountains is one of special note<sup>217</sup>), cabins on Mackay and Rusty Lakes, cultural and historic sites, recreation sites, firewood and log timber harvest. Within the Norman Wells community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 80% high; 16% moderate high. Located in an Outfitting Region with registered outfitter in operation.

<sup>216</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>217</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

## 35. Táhlu Tué & Táshín Tué (Stewart and Tate Lakes)

Designation	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14; CR# 19 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	9	
<b>Area</b>	121 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	96.9%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Stewart Lake (35A) and Tate Lake (35B) both have a 1 km buffer. The zone is located south of Tulita to the west of the Mackenzie River.	

### Reason for Establishment

Stewart Lake and Tate Lake were identified as important fish lakes which enabled people to survive during extreme weather and when hunting was difficult. Community concerns are the protection of water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, continued access for recreational and subsistence use and the fish populations upon which people have depended for a long time. Traditional practices such as fishing, camping, hunting, trapping and berry and plant harvesting continue to take place.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Both lakes are habitat for: furbearers, moose, bears and boreal woodland caribou. Both are important fish bearing lakes and have important breeding duck habitat<sup>218</sup>.

Harvest on both lakes includes: waterfowl and birds, furbearers, moose, bears, fish, small game, woodland caribou, berries and plants. Stewart Lake is an important area for families to hunt, trap and fish together. A may-be at risk plant is documented on Stewart Lake: *Symphyotrichum yukonense*.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, cabins, outpost camps, tent sites, traditional camps, log timber harvest sites. Both lakes are cultural sites with point specific cultural sites along their shores.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 10% high; 65% moderate high; 26% moderate. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence. Within an outfitter region. Existing infrastructure: access roads.

<sup>218</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>



<b>36. Mio Lake</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	9	
<b>Area</b>	19 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	7.2%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is applied around the lake which lies within the Mackenzie River Special Management Zone, on the eastern bank. It is south of Tulita.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Tulita is primarily concerned with maintaining waterfowl and bird habitat and continued subsistence use of the area for hunting and fishing.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife habitat includes: wetlands, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>219</sup>, boreal woodland caribou habitat, general moose habitat and moose winter habitat. Moose and fish harvest takes place throughout the zone.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, cabins, camps, log timber harvest sites.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 92% moderate high; 8% low-moderate. Proposed infrastructure: MGP roads.

<sup>219</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

## 37. Tłı Dehdele Dıdlı (Red Dog Mountain)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	9	
<b>Area</b>	27 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	The Red Dog Mountain Conservation Zone is located in the Mackenzie Valley along the Keele River, south of Tulita.	

### Reason for Establishment

Red Dog Mountain is a sacred site for the Mountain Dene. It was subject of an earlier proposal to be commemorated as a National Historic Site. Stories are associated with the mountain. To this day people make offerings to show respect and to ensure safe passage.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological, burial, cultural and heritage sites exist.

**Values to be Respected:** Boreal woodland caribou and mountain woodland caribou from the Redstone herd occur in the zone. The Keele River is an Important Wildlife Area<sup>220</sup> for moose. Habitat includes: general and winter moose habitat, furbearer habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>221</sup> and waterfowl and migratory bird habitat. Dall's sheep also inhabit the area.

Harvested species include: mountain woodland caribou, occasional boreal woodland caribou, waterfowl and birds, furbearers, fish, Dall's sheep and a high concentration of moose.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, log timber harvest along the Keele River and recreational site.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 44% high; 30% moderate; 21% low. Commercial outfitter and self-guided river trips (canoe, kayak, and raft) along the Keele River have been increasing in popularity. The story of Red Dog Mountain and other stories are of considerable interest to those who paddle the river.

**Additional Information:** Red Dog Mountain Story: People use to portage around Red Dog Mountain because it was said that the Red Dog would take them and eat them if they passed by on the water. One day a medicine man was travelling with a group. He gathered all their possessions including mitts, moccasins, weapons and food. He paddled down the river past the mountain and a whirlpool opened. He threw all their possessions into the water and the eddy subsided, letting him pass. See *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>222</sup>, for the complete story.

<sup>220</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>221</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>222</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

*Rakekée Gok'é Godı: Places We Take Care Of and Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>223</sup> recommended the following:

- National Historic Site designation with surface and subsurface protection;
- Revival of proposal to commemorate Red Dog Mountain in consultation with community

---

<sup>223</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

## 38. Mackenzie Mountains

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	10	
<b>Area</b>	40,029 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	1.8%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located in the south-west of the SSA predominantly in the Tulita District and a small portion in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

The people of the Sahtu have been using the Mackenzie Mountains for centuries. Stories, traditional trails, cultural/heritage sites and subsistence use areas are located throughout as the Mountain Dene travelled between the valley and the mountains.

The mountains offer unique habitat that includes calving/lambing, overwintering and general range for a number of wildlife species that inhabit the area such as Dall's sheep, mountain goat and mountain woodland caribou.

A number of mineral deposits have been identified in the Mackenzie Mountains. The SMZ will allow for the exploration and development of these and other mineral deposits.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological, burial, cultural and heritage sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Mountain goats are the predominant wildlife found in the mountainous areas.<sup>224</sup> Dall's sheep habitat includes lambing sites and sheep winter habitat including an Important Wildlife Area. Important Wildlife Areas<sup>225</sup> for mountain woodland caribou, Bonnet Plume herd migration route, calving grounds and range, Redstone herd migration route, calving grounds, rutting/wintering area are all found in the zone and South Nahanni herd calving grounds.

The valleys provide winter habitat for moose and mountain woodland caribou. Moose surveys in the Sahtu have found that riparian areas along the Mackenzie River and its tributaries have high densities in the winter. Many of the tributaries run down from the mountains and are associated with moose habitat. *Alces alces gigas*, the Alaska-Yukon subspecies of moose living in the Mackenzie Mountains are the largest moose subspecies. Wolves may also be found.<sup>226</sup>

Important Wildlife Areas for moose and bears occur. There is furbearer habitat along the forested river valleys, grizzly bear habitat, fish habitat, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat, important breeding duck habitat and wetlands. Ecologically significant features include karst formations, concentrations of mineral licks, hot/warm springs, glacial refugia, eskers and may-be-at-risk plants: *Minuartia macrocarpa*, *Papaver mconnellii*, *Draba ogilviensis*, *Claytonia megarhiza*, and *Cyprogramma stelleri*.

<sup>224</sup> Larter, C. Nicholas, Mountain Goat Survey, Flat River Area, Western Mackenzie Mountains, September 2004, Manuscript Report No. 157, GNWT, Department of Resources, Wildlife, and Economic Development

<sup>225</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>226</sup> Larter, C. Nicholas, Mountain Goat Survey, Flat River Area, Western Mackenzie Mountains, September 2004, Manuscript Report No. 157, GNWT, Department of Resources, Wildlife, and Economic Development

International Biological Programme<sup>227</sup> sites include: Coral Peaks - Site 59, Florence Lake Study Area - Site 31, Carcajou Lake Study Area - Site 72, Plains of Abraham - Site 26, Lymnaea Springs Study Site - Site 60 and Sculpin Springs - Site 70.

The Mackenzie River and its tributaries are important moose hunting areas<sup>228</sup>. The Mountain People would travel into the mountains in the fall to hunt moose, caribou and sheep and travel back into the valley in moose skin boats in the spring. Moose harvest in the mountains was important for survival.

**Values to Take into account:** Camps, cabins, tent sites, traditional trails especially up the Keele River and some leading into the Yukon Territory. Two trails are of special significance, Trail to the Mountains and the Mountain Dene Trail to the Mountains. See Additional Information. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 16% low-moderate; 83% low. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence. Known mineralization: Carbonate hosted Zn Pb, coal, red bed slash kupferschiefer type Cu. Mineral rights: leases. In an outfitting region with companies in operation. Existing infrastructure includes: an airstrip, Canol Road extending 14 Km from the Yukon boarder, and mining access road.

**Additional Information:** The Mackenzie Mountains are irregular and primarily made up of limestone, dolomite and shale.<sup>229</sup> Erosion has resulted in unstable rubble slopes, cliffs and steep canyons. The mountain tops average an elevation of 2100 m and subalpine areas are usually found below 1800 m.<sup>230</sup>

Trail to the Mountains, Shit'a Got'ine Eht'ene, is a "traditional trail that leads from Fort Good Hope to the headwaters of the Arctic Red River in the Mackenzie Mountains. It was used for centuries and was travelled on foot and by dog team. The Mountain River was used as the return route using moose skin boats in the spring. The trail was used to access winter hunting grounds for the Shit'a Got'ine (Mountain People) where they would spend the winter taking moose, caribou and sheep. The trail was last walked in the 1950s."<sup>231</sup>

The Mountain Dene Trail to the Mountains, Shuht'a Got'ine Eht'ene, starts on the Mackenzie River at Tulita, crosses the Mackenzie Lowlands to Stewart and Tate Lakes, crossing the Keele drainage and on to Drum Lake in the Mackenzie Mountains. From there it joins a network of trails reaching throughout the mountains and into the Yukon. It was used extensively as a walking trail in the fall and by dog team in the winter. In the fall families would move from the valley into the mountains where they would hunt moose, caribou and sheep, to return to the valleys in the springtime by moose skin boats. Many sites along the trail are important in Mountain Dene culture and history. Archaeological research shows that the trail area has been used for centuries.

The *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>232</sup> report suggested:

- Territorial Historic Park;
- Undertake oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources;
- Surface of documented sites be protected with commemoration of specific areas;

---

<sup>227</sup>International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>228</sup> ibid

<sup>229</sup> Larter, C. Nicholas, Mountain Goat Survey, Flat River Area, Western Mackenzie Mountains, September 2004, Manuscript Report No. 157, GNWT, Department of Resources, Wildlife, and Economic Development

<sup>230</sup> ibid

<sup>231</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.P. 62

<sup>232</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.



- Trail experience be recreated through cultural revival projects (eg. walking the trail with youth and elders).
- National Historic Site with surface protection;
- Revive the old National Historic Site proposal;
- Undertake oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources and burials;
- Surface of documented sites be protected;
- Identify trail for special consideration in the land use planning process.

## 39. Do Et'Q (Doi T'oh Territorial Park and Canol Heritage Trail Reserve)

Designation	Proposed Conservation Initiative	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	10	
<b>Area</b>	939 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Doi T'oh Park (Dodo Canyon and the Canol Heritage Trail) includes most of the 355 km Canol Trail. It begins on the western bank of the Mackenzie River near Norman Wells and extends nearly to Macmillan Pass on the NWT/Yukon border.	

### Reason for Establishment

The Canol Heritage Trail and Dodo Canyon are part of 355 km road and pipeline built during WWII to connect an oil field in Norman Wells to Whitehorse, Yukon.<sup>233</sup> It is the path of least resistance through the mountains and follows a trail taken for centuries by the Mountain Dene to hunt, fish and trap.<sup>234</sup> Today Dodo Canyon and the Canol Trail are cultural and recreational use areas with historic and heritage value.

The *SDMCLCA*, allows for but does not require the establishment of a Territorial Park around the Canol Trail and Dodo Canyon. The establishment of a park could create tourism possibilities.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites, heritage trail, cultural sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Important Wildlife Areas<sup>235</sup> for mountain woodland caribou, general habitat for the Bonnet Plume herd, general habitat including rutting/wintering, calving grounds for the Redstone herd and found along its migration route.

Black and grizzly bear habitat occur from the Mackenzie River to Dodo Canyon. Mile 36 to Mile 222 and the Mackenzie Barrens are important grizzly bear habitat.<sup>236</sup> Habitats include: Important Wildlife Areas<sup>237</sup> for bears, moose and Dall's sheep, general Dall's sheep and mountain goat habitat throughout, important breeding duck habitat<sup>238</sup>, furbearer habitat and hoary marmots are found in the zone.

Ecologically significant features include mineral licks, karst features, glacial refugia, wetlands, an International Biological Programme site Mackenzie Mountain Barrens - Site 58 which hosts a may-be at risk plant, *Draba albertina* and other may-be at risk plants *Claytonia megarhiza* and *Minuartia macrocarpa*.

<sup>233</sup> *ibid*

<sup>234</sup> Hawkings, Tim, Hiker's Guide to the Canol Heritage Trail, 1996, ITI, GNWT

<sup>235</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>236</sup> Draft 3 SLUP Comments – ENR Sahtu Region: September 8, 2010

<sup>237</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>238</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

Wildlife harvest includes waterfowl and birds, moose, mountain woodland caribou, bears harvested in Dodo Canyon and on the Mackenzie Barrens and fish harvest at Godlin River and Ekwi River. Only resident hunters can hunt grizzly bears but little subsistence harvest occurs.

**Values to Take into account:** Recreational sites.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 85% low. Oil and gas rights: exploration licences. In an outfitting region with three outfitters in operation. Tourism potential: The Canol Heritage Trail is recognized as one of premier long-distance expedition hikes in the world. Dechinla Lodge is located at Mile 213. It has been in operation for decades and is used for recreation by residents of Norman Wells.

**Additional Information:** After the war the pipeline was shut down and most of the steel pipe and equipment were removed. Today derelict vehicles and buildings remain along the Heritage Trail which follows the hunting trails of the Mountain Dene across rivers, through mountain passes and over barren plateaus. The area's history is of interest to locals and tourists.

The only study of grizzlies in the Sahtu was carried out at Mackenzie Barrens in late 1970s (Miller et al.).<sup>239</sup>

### **Conservation Initiative Status**

S.17.3 of the *SDMCLCA* allows for the establishment of the Canol Heritage Trail and Dodo Canyon as a territorial park. ITI and the Tulita District have indicated to INAC that they want to proceed with S. 17.3 of *SDCLCA* for a territorial park. Surface crown lands are currently reserved to the GNWT. AANDC's Contaminants and Remediation Directorate [CARD] is assessing locations along the trail for evidence of contamination to determine whether remediation is warranted and whether such a project would be eligible for funding under the Federal Contaminated Sites Action Plan, or otherwise subject to a risk management/monitoring approach. Resolution of issues around contamination would remove impediments to the ultimate permanent transfer of land to the GNWT. This initiative is not part of the Protected Areas Strategy.

*Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>240</sup> recommended the creation of a Territorial Park as designated by the Sahtu Dene and Metis Comprehensive Land Claim Agreement.

---

<sup>239</sup> Draft 3 SLUP Comments – ENR Sahtu Region: September 8, 2010

<sup>240</sup> *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001*, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

## 40. Shúhtagot'ine Néné (Mountain Dene Land)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	10	
<b>Area</b>	8,982 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	14.7%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Shúhtagot'ine Néné lies within the Mackenzie Mountains. It has two sections. One includes the northern portion of the Canol Trail and Dodo Canyon. The other encompasses parts of the Keele River (Begáádeé), Redstone and Ravens Throat Rivers (Tátsók'áádeé), Drum Lake, June Lake and Caribou Flats.	

### Reason for Establishment

Shúhtagot'ine Néné, or Mountain Dene Land is ecologically and culturally important to the Dene and Metis from Norman Wells and Tulita. The Mountain Dene used traditional trails travelling mostly up the Keele River in the summer to hunt moose, make moose skin boats and to return from the mountains in the fall.<sup>241</sup> Important wildlife habitats support a number of species as well as hunting, trapping and fishing in the rivers valleys and mountains.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites, cultural and heritage sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Shúhtagot'ine Néné supports several COSEWIC and SARA "at risk" listed species<sup>242</sup> which either inhabit the area all-year round or as migrants. Some of those species are: boreal woodland caribou, northern mountain caribou, wolverine, peregrine falcon and rusty blackbird. The harlequin duck, bull trout and inconnu fish are ranked by ENR as may-be-at-risk under the general status program.<sup>243</sup>

The zone has amongst some of the highest density of grizzly bears in the NWT.<sup>244</sup> General habitat and Important Wildlife Areas for grizzly bears are found along the Redstone River.

Mountain woodland caribou habitat is found throughout the mountains including Redstone herd migration route, calving grounds, rutting/wintering grounds and Bonnet Plume general range. The Keele River provides important mountain woodland caribou wintering grounds. Important Wildlife Area for mountain woodland caribou has been identified. Boreal woodland and barren-ground caribou also inhabit the zone.

There is general moose habitat, Important Wildlife Areas<sup>245</sup> for moose and riparian areas along the Mackenzie River and its tributaries have high moose densities during the winter. The O'Grady Lake area provides high quality "willow flat" habitat.

<sup>241</sup> PAS website: <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-shuhtagotine.asp>

<sup>242</sup> ibid

<sup>243</sup> ibid

<sup>244</sup> EBA Consulting, March 2009, Executive Summary, Shuhtagot'ine Nene, Ecological Assessment II, <http://www.nwtpas.ca/areas/document-2009-shuhtagotine-eaphase2-summary.pdf>

<sup>245</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

Habitat exists for furbearers, waterfowl and migratory birds, mountain goat and Dall's sheep - including critical lambing, winter habitat and an Important Wildlife Area. Important breeding duck habitat<sup>246</sup> is located around Drum Lake and at the mouth of the Keele River as it enters the Mackenzie Valley. Critical wildlife habitat includes: large areas of grizzly bear denning habitat, significant mountain woodland caribou winter habitat, moose habitat in the river valleys. Important fish bearing rivers and lakes include: Keele River, Drum Lake, Raven's Throat, O'Grady Lake, Redstone River and Stone Knife.

Ecologically significant areas<sup>247</sup> and features include: glacial refugial, mineral licks, hot and warm springs, karst features and may-be at risk plants (Keele River corridor: *Claytonia megarhiza*, *Draba porsildii*, *Penstemon gormanii*).

International Biological Programme<sup>248</sup> sites include:

- Raven's Throat, Site 29,
- Caribou Flats, Site 76 with may-be at risk plant: *Blysmopsis rufus*
- Moosehorn Headwaters, Site 57 with may-be at risk plant: *Oxytropis scammaniana*
- Cirque Lake Area, Site 55 with may-be at risk plant: *Leptarrhena pyrolifolia*
- Mackenzie Mountain Barren, Site 58 with may-be at risk plant: *Draba albertina*

Harvested species include: mountain woodland caribou, moose, bears, waterfowl, birds, fish and furbearers. Berries and plants are also harvested. Subsistence hunting is concentrated along the Keele River for Tulita and the Mackenzie Barrens for hunters from Ross River. Sport hunters accompanied by outfitters will hunt throughout the zone.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, tent frames, camping sites. Cabins and outpost camps in high concentration can be found around Drum Lake in the Raven's Throat and Redstone River corridor. Drum Lake is a popular use area which includes values such as plant and berry harvest sites, cultural sites, cabins and burial and archaeological sites.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 16% low-moderate; 83% low. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence. Known mineralization: Red bed slash kuferschiefer type Cu. Potential hydroelectric development site on the Keele River. In an outfitting region with three active outfitters.

**Additional Information:** In August 2009 the Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) agreed to sponsor Shúhtagot'ine Néné as a candidate National Wildlife Area (NWA) under the NWT PAS process. Due to difficulties in obtaining a land withdrawal and a reduction in boundaries to allow for greater economic development opportunities the area is now identified as a Conservation Zone under the Plan. The community of Tulita has expressed continued interest in pursuing NWA designation for the zone.

**Further Documentation:** Phase 1 & 2 Ecological Assessments, Cultural Documentation, Renewable and Non-Renewable Resource Assessment, Naming Report, and Hydrocarbon Assessments have all been completed as a part of the PAS process. The reports are available online.<sup>249</sup>

Cultural and subsistence use documentation was coordinated by the Tulita District Land Corporation in collaboration with the Shuhtagot'ine Nene and Naats'hch'oh Working Groups. See: Spirit of the Mountains: Shuhtagot'ine Nene and Naats'hch'oh Traditional Knowledge Study, December 2009.

---

<sup>246</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>247</sup> Northwest Territories Protected Areas Strategy Science Team. (August 6, 2009). Ecological Representation Analysis of Conservation Zones/Protected Areas Initiatives in the April 30, 2009 Draft Sahtu Land Use Plan.

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Draft%2020%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Draft%2020%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf)

<sup>248</sup> *International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline*, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>249</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-shuhtagotine.asp>



<b>41. NAATS'IHCH'OH</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Proposed Conservation Initiative	
<b>Conformity Requirements (CRs) &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 2-13 CR# 14 Prohibitions: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	10	
<b>Area</b>	7,604 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	All land is Crown land.	
	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Naats'ihch'oh lies in the far south-western corner of the SSA in the Mackenzie Mountains. The Naats'ihch'oh PCI includes the headwaters of the South Nahanni River. The entire Naats'ihch'oh PCI zone is currently under an Interim land withdrawal.	

Readers are referred to Parks Canada for further details and Park establishment studies.<sup>250</sup>

### Reasons for Establishment

Naats'ihch'oh National Park Reserve, when gazetted, will be within the headwaters of the South Nahanni River. Its protection will offer extended protection to the South Nahanni River which is currently protected by the Nahanni National Park Reserve in the Dehcho. Together, the Nahanni and Nááts'ihch'oh national park reserves will protect much of the entire South Nahanni watershed.

Within the park reserves, habitat for mountain woodland caribou, grizzly bears, Dall's sheep, mountain goats and Trumpeter swans will be preserved.<sup>251</sup> "This area has been travelled and valued for hunting and its spiritual importance by the Shutagot'ine (Mountain Dene) of the Tulita District. The mountain, Naats'ihch'oh (Mount Wilson), from which the park takes its name is credited with great spiritual powers."<sup>252</sup>

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological, burial and special cultural sites exist in the zone.

Naats'ihch'oh PCI includes the upper portion of the South Nahanni River. The upper part of the watershed that lies within the SSA accounts for about 1/6 of the Greater Nahanni Ecosystem.<sup>253</sup> The area includes an alpine plateau with ridges and summer snow packs that are important habitat for grizzly bears and mountain woodland caribou.<sup>254</sup> Both species are considered to be of "special concern" by the Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC).<sup>255</sup>

The large bodied wildlife species considered to be of greatest concern in the region are mountain goat, Dall's sheep, mountain woodland caribou, grizzly bear, and moose. The entire PCI is mountain woodland caribou habitat constitutes a significant part of and along their migration routes. Two Important Wildlife Areas<sup>256</sup> for mountain woodland caribou have been identified. From late spring through late fall, the South Nahanni herd of mountain woodland caribou calve, over-summer and rut primarily in the Little

<sup>250</sup> Parks Canada website: <http://www.pc.gc.ca/eng/pn-np/nt/naatsihchoh/index.aspx>

<sup>251</sup> Parks Canada website: <http://www.pc.gc.ca/eng/pn-np/nt/naatsihchoh/index.aspx>

<sup>252</sup> ibid

<sup>253</sup> ibid

<sup>254</sup> ibid

<sup>255</sup> ibid

<sup>256</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

Nahanni River and Lened Creek areas to and across the Yukon border. The Redstone herd of mountain woodland caribou utilize the full north and eastern portion of the South Nahanni watershed.

The area has the greatest concentration of mountain goats in the Sahtu (likely over 75%) and some of the highest grizzly bear densities.<sup>257</sup> The GNWT has identified the PCI as an Important Wildlife Area<sup>258</sup> for bears and sheep.<sup>259</sup> The area around the Little Nahanni River also includes a resident population of Dall's sheep thought to be the unique genetic stock that populated the Yukon and Northwest Territories after the last ice age.<sup>260</sup>

The zone is a long established subsistence use area that is undergoing archaeological investigations through the Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre. The Shuhtagot'ine, Mountain Dene of the Tulita District believe that Naats'ihch'oh produced medicine people with great spiritual powers.

**Values to be Respected/Take into account:** Recreation and community gathering places. Contact Parks Canada for details.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 95% low. Known mineralization: Carbonate hosted Zn Pb, Intrusion Related, SEDEX. Mineral rights: leases and claims. In an outfitting region with four active outfitters. A detailed Mineral and Energy Assessment (MERA) has been conducted to identify the potential of resources in the area. The results are currently being used to assess boundary options for the park. Readers are referred to Parks Canada for details.<sup>261</sup> Existing infrastructure includes a mining access road.

**Additional Information:** Parks Canada has assembled considerable information into an Area of Interest Atlas.<sup>262</sup> Readers are referred to the atlas for greater detail on the ecological values.

**Conservation Initiative Status :** On August 22, 2012 an announcement was made to establish the Naats'ihch'oh National Park Reserve. The Naats'ihch'oh National Park Reserve will connect with the Nahanni National Park Reserve in the Dehcho Territory which expanded in 2009 to include the majority of the Greater Nahanni Watershed. For details on the establishment see the Parks Canada website.<sup>263</sup>

#### **Additional Wildlife Information**<sup>264</sup>:

Mountain goat, Dall's sheep, mountain woodland caribou, grizzly bear, and moose are of particular concern because they: typically range across large areas, are at low densities and are sensitive to human activities.

**Mountain goat** range in the Sahtu is restricted to an area along and just north of the Settlement Area's southern boundary in the western side of the Mackenzie Mountains. It is likely that there are not more than 200 mountain goats in the Sahtu and these represent the northernmost mountain goats in Canada; certainly the most northern in the NWT.

---

<sup>257</sup> Draft 3 SLUP Comments – ENR Sahtu Regions, September 8, 2010, [www.sahtulanduseplan.org](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org)

<sup>258</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>259</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>260</sup> Parks Canada written submission to SLUPB on Draft 3, October 1, 2010

<sup>261</sup> Mineral and energy resource assessment of the Greater Nahanni Ecosystem under consideration for the expansion of the Nahanni National Park Reserve, Northwest Territories; Wright, D F; Lemkow, D; Harris, J R. Geological Survey of Canada, Open File 5344, 2007; 557 pages, Available at: [http://geopub.nrcan.gc.ca/moreinfo\\_e.php?id=224425](http://geopub.nrcan.gc.ca/moreinfo_e.php?id=224425)

<sup>262</sup> Naats'ihch'oh National Park Reserve, Parks Canada, February 2013, Available at <http://www.pc.gc.ca/eng/pn-nt/naatsihchoh/index.aspx>

<sup>263</sup> ibid

<sup>264</sup> Courtesy personal communication with ENR Wildlife Biologists, 2012

**Dall's sheep** occur across much of the Mackenzie Mountain range in the NWT (appx. 140,000 km<sup>2</sup>). The current Naats'ihch'oh PCI is not noted for having particularly high density sheep populations in comparison with other areas of the Mackenzie Mountain portion of the Sahtu. However, current and potential sheep habitat occurs across the PCI. Dall's sheep do not usually migrate over any great distances, and once removed from an area because of disturbance or other factors, will generally either be slow to recolonize or may permanently abandon the area.

**Mountain woodland caribou** are listed as a species of Special Concern under the federal *Species at Risk Act*. The main threats to these caribou are land use activities and hunting. The entire northern section of the Naats'ihch'oh PCI boundary area is used by Redstone caribou and the area south of the South Nahanni River is used by the South Nahanni herd. The snow patches in the high alpine areas between the Selwyn and Lened claims, are used by caribou and their young calves in July to escape insect harassment. The same area, concentrated along the Little Nahanni River and Lened Creeks, covers much late summer range, which is a critical time for caribou to gain sufficient fat reserves to make it through the fall rut and then through the winter.

**Grizzly bears** have been recommended for listing as "Special Concern" under the federal *Species at Risk Act*. The main threats are land use activities causing disturbance and human/bear conflicts. The area has the highest density estimate for northern mountain grizzly bear populations in the Yukon and NWT and shows the relatively high productivity of some sections of the upper South Nahanni Watershed within Naats'ihch'oh. The largest very high density grizzly bear area lies almost totally between the Selwyn and Lened claim areas, particularly along the Little Nahanni watershed.

## 42. Faʔfa Niljne (Mountain River Extension)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	11	
<b>Area</b>	1,348 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	11.6%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 5 km buffer is applied to the river from the Mackenzie Mountains to the Mackenzie River. South of Fort Good Hope in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

The Mountain River was a traditional trail used by the Mountain Dene of Fort Good Hope. There are many named places, camping, hunting, fishing locations and stories associated with the river. It continues to be an important moose hunting area and is known as the shortest route to the highest mountains and sheep hunting areas.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological, burial, cultural and historic sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Moose use the tributary rivers and riparian areas along Mackenzie River. Harvesters say that in January, cold temperatures and deep snow cause moose to congregate along the major river valleys.<sup>265</sup> Ice and flood action in fast-flowing river drainages keeps vegetation in an early successional stage, providing important food species such as willow and alder for moose in the winter time.<sup>266</sup>

Wildlife habitat includes: furbearer habitat, moose habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>267</sup>, Dall's sheep habitat, boreal woodland caribou habitat, wetlands, barren-ground, boreal woodland and mountain woodland caribou habitat. The zone is along the Bonnet Plume mountain woodland caribou herd's migration path and is part of its general habitat. Other wildlife found in the zone include bears, fish, mountain goat, waterfowl and migratory birds. An Important Wildlife Area for mountain woodland caribou occurs.

Of ecological significance are karst features, International Biological Programme site "Coral Peaks" - Site 59, may-be at risk plants, glacial refugia.

Wildlife harvested include: waterfowl, furbearers, fish, a high concentration of moose, and bears.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, recreational areas, cabins and outpost camps. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 19% high, 21% moderate; 45% low. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence. Gravel and sand deposits. A potential hydroelectric power development site. In an outfitting region with operating businesses. Popular with white water canoeists, the river has tremendous tourism potential.

<sup>265</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>266</sup> ibid

<sup>267</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

**Additional Information:** The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>268</sup> and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>269</sup> recommend a combination of the following:

- Designation of the zone as a Heritage River;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources;
- Surface protection documented sites and commemoration of specific sites to be negotiated following an inventory of the area.

---

<sup>268</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews

<sup>269</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

## 43. Carcajou River

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	11	
<b>Area</b>	383 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	59.4%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 1 km buffer is applied to both sides of the River. Carcajou River is located in both the K'asho Got'ine and Tulita Districts.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 1 km Special Management buffer be applied to a number of rivers and large creeks in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife habitat includes: waterfowl and migratory birds, Dall's sheep, mountain goats, bears, furbearers, Boreal woodland, mountain woodland and barren-ground caribou. The zone is within the Redstone migration route and rutting and wintering grounds. The entire river is an Important Wildlife Area<sup>270</sup> for moose, Dall's sheep and mountain woodland caribou, the river bears fish and important breeding duck habitat<sup>271</sup> exist. Ecological features<sup>272</sup> include: karst formations, an International Biological Programme site<sup>273</sup>, glacial refugia and wetlands.

Harvested species include: moose, fish, furbearers, bears, boreal woodland caribou and mountain woodland caribou from the Redstone herd.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trials, outpost camps. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 48% high; 28% moderate high; 18% low. Oil and gas rights: exploration licences. Gravel and sand deposits. Identified as a potential hydroelectric power development site. In an outfitting region with outfitters in operation.

<sup>270</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>271</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>272</sup> Northwest Territories Protected Areas Strategy Science Team. (August 6, 2009). Ecological Representation Analysis of Conservation Zones/Protected Areas Initiatives in the April 30, 2009 Draft Sahtu Land Use Plan.

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf)

<sup>273</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT



## 44. Florence Lake

Designation	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	11	
<b>Area</b>	57 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	89.4%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Florence Lake lies at the foothills of the Mackenzie Mountains. It sits on the Tulita side of the K'asho Got'ine and Tulia District boundary line.	

### Reason for Establishment

Florence Lake is of ecological significance. It is an International Biological Programme (IBP) site<sup>274</sup> and habitat for wildlife such as moose, mountain woodland caribou and Dall's sheep. The intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Florence Lake sits at the foothills of the Mackenzie Mountains. Species inhabiting the area include Dall's sheep, bears, mountain goat, moose, waterfowl, migratory birds, boreal woodland caribou and mountain woodland caribou. It is within the Bonnet Plume range. The lake is used for moose, fish and furbearer harvest. In the 1970's Florence Lake was believed to be some of the only winter habitat available to moose in the vicinity.<sup>275</sup> It is also an Important Wildlife Area for moose and mountain woodland caribou<sup>276</sup> important breeding duck habitat<sup>277</sup>, general furbearer habitat and general Dall's sheep habitat including critical and winter habitat. Salt licks<sup>278</sup>, glacial refugia and IBP Site, Florence Lake - Site 31 are documented.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, tent frames, traditional trails.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 43% moderate; 57% low. Oil and gas rights: exploration licences. In an outfitting region with an operator in business. Tourism potential: Florence Lake provides the easiest access to hikers headed for the mountains from the lake. It can be reached from Norman Wells on float/ski plane or by snowmobile in winter. It is a relatively inexpensive charter flight. The fishing is good and valley moose, Dall's sheep, boreal or mountain woodland caribou can be hunted from the same location.

<sup>274</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>275</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>276</sup> ibid

<sup>277</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>278</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

45. Palmer Lake		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	11	
<b>Area</b>	34 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located within the Mackenzie Mountains in the Tulita District. It is north of the Canol Trail.	

### Reason for Establishment

Palmer Lake is critical Dall's sheep habitat. It has a high density of Dall's sheep and has been called the "best sheep area in the Sahtu" (IWA draft, 2008),<sup>279</sup> based on an annual monitoring program started in 1997.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Palmer Lake's primary ecological value is in protecting Dall's sheep habitat. An Important Wildlife Area for Dall's sheep is documented. Mountain woodland caribou inhabit the area. It is in the Bonnet Plume herd's general range, part of their migration route and calving area. Fish, mountain goat, waterfowl and migratory birds also inhabit the zone. The zone is part of a glacial refugia.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, camps, outposts, recreational site.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 90% low-moderate; 10% low. Within an outfitting region with an active outfitter. Existing infrastructure: airstrip.

**Additional Information:** See ENR wildlife biologists in Norman Wells for more information on Dall's sheep.

<sup>279</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

## 46. K'ááchohtíideé (Mountain River)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water	
<b>Map #</b>	11	
<b>Area</b>	446 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 1 km buffer is applied along the portion of Mountain River that is located in the Tulita District. It meets up with Mountain River Extension Conservation Zone in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

K'ááchohtíideé is an important travel corridor, subsistence use location and traditional trail used by the Mountain Dene of Fort Good Hope. Named places, camping, hunting, fishing locations and stories are associated with the River. Stories tell of travel along the river in mooseskin boats. The river has tourism potential for white water canoeists.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites, cultural and historical sites. Nominated as a National Heritage River.

**Values to be Respected:** Moose use the tributary rivers and riparian areas along the Mackenzie River. Harvesters say that in January, cold temperatures and deep snow cause moose to congregate along the major river valleys.<sup>280</sup> Ice and flood action in fast-flowing river drainages keeps vegetation in an early successional stage, providing important food species such as willow and alder.<sup>281</sup> Important Wildlife Area for moose is identified.

The zone includes: furbearers, moose, fish, mountain goat, waterfowl, bird, Dall's sheep, boreal and mountain woodland caribou habitat and important breeding duck habitat<sup>282</sup>. The river provides important mountain woodland caribou wintering habitat.<sup>283</sup> The Bonnet Plume mountain woodland caribou herd has general range, migration routes and calving areas in the zone. Waterfowl, furbearers, fish, bears and a high concentration of moose are harvested.

Ecologically significant features<sup>284</sup> include: warm/hot springs, glacial refugia, wetlands and mineral licks.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, recreational areas, cabins and outpost camps. Mountain River Trail is a traditional trail that leads to the Yukon. For details see *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*.<sup>285</sup>

<sup>280</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>281</sup> ibid

<sup>282</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>283</sup> PAS website: <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-shuhtagotine.asp>

<sup>284</sup> Northwest Territories Protected Areas Strategy Science Team. (August 6, 2009). Ecological Representation Analysis of Conservation Zones/Protected Areas Initiatives in the April 30, 2009 Draft Sahtu Land Use Plan.

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf)

<sup>285</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 14% low-moderate; 86% low. Known mineralization: Carbonate hosted Zn Pb. In an outfitting region with two active outfitters.

**Additional Information:** This zone was previously part of Shúhtagot'ine Néné which was undergoing PAS designation. The boundaries of Shúhtagot'ine Néné have been largely reduced to allow for mineral development and it is now a Conservation Zone under the Plan. The entire Mountain River was designated a Special Management Zone to connect with the Mountain River Extension Conservation Zone in the K'asho Got'ine District. The Mountain River has long been used by the People of Fort Good Hope for subsistence. It was used for travel into the Mountains in the summer. The return was done in mooseskin boats in the fall. Its significance is similar to the Keele River for Tulita.

**Other Documentation:**

As a part of the PAS process, Phase 1 & 2 Ecological Assessments, Cultural Documentation, Renewable and Non-Renewable Resource Assessment, Naming Report, and Hydrocarbon Assessments have all been completed for Shúhtagot'ine Néné when the Mountain River was still included in the zone. The reports are available from the NWT PAS<sup>286</sup>.

Cultural and subsistence use documentation for Shúhtagot'ine Néné was coordinated by the Tulita District Land Corporation in collaboration with the Shuhtagot'ine Nene and Naatsi'hch'oh Working Groups. See: Spirit of the Mountains: Shuhtagot'ine Nene and Naatsi'hch'oh Traditional Knowledge Study, December 2009.

The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>287</sup> and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>288</sup> recommend a combination of the following:

- Designation of the zone as a Heritage River;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources;
- Surface protection documented sites and commemoration of specific sites to be negotiated following an inventory of the area.

---

<sup>286</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-shuhtagotine.asp>

<sup>287</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>288</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

<b>47. Cache Lake</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	11	
<b>Area</b>	32 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located within the Mackenzie Mountains, south of the Canol Trail in the Tulita District. A 500m buffer has been applied to the lakeshore.	

### **Reason for Establishment**

Cache Lake was previously included in Shuh'tagot'ine Nene but when the SGN boundaries shrank to allow for mineral development it was retained as a conservation zone upon request from the Tulita elders. A 500m buffer has been applied to the lakeshore. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Wildlife includes mountain goat, fish and mountain woodland caribou. It is within the Bonnet Plume caribou herd's range.

**Values to Take into account:** Plant and harvest sites, glacial refugium.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% low. Within an outfitting region with one in operation.

## 48. Tuésene (Mountain Hot Springs)

Designation	Conservation Zone	
CRs & Prohibitions	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
Map #	11	
Area	75 km <sup>2</sup>	
Land Ownership	Sahtu Subsurface Ownership	Sahtu Surface Ownership
	-	21%
Location & Boundaries	The three hot springs, two of which are IBP <sup>289</sup> sites, are located within the Mackenzie Mountains, 75km south-west of Tulita.	

### Reason for Establishment

The zone includes three hot springs in the Mackenzie Mountains, two of which, Sculpin and Lymnae Springs are identified as International Biological Program (IBP) sites. Hot springs have mineral licks that are used by ungulates such as Dall's sheep, moose and caribou. The two IBP sites provide unique habitat for specialized plants and animals such as an endemic species of snail (*Lymnaea bulmoides*) and slimy sculpins.

**Values to be Protected:** Karst features, mineral licks.

**Values to be Respected:** This zone is within mountain woodland caribou habitat and the Redstone woodland caribou herd migration range. An Important Wildlife Area for mountain woodland caribou occurs. The mineral licks lie within excellent Redstone mountain woodland caribou, moose (Alaska-Yukon subspecies), Dall's sheep and mountain goat habitat and in a glacial refugium<sup>290</sup>. Waterfowl and/or migratory birds are also documented.

Two of the springs are International Biological Programme (IBP)<sup>291</sup> sites:

- Lymnae Springs, Site 60: hot spring pool which provides unusual habitat conditions for some specialized plants; a snail subspecies of *Lymnaea bulmoides* present year-round; area probably used as a mineral lick by ungulates.
- Sculpin Springs, Site 70: warm mineral spring which provides habitat for ancient plant species; slimy sculpin a new species of *Lymnaea* snail; nesting killdeer in the site.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% low. In an outfitting region with active operators.

**Additional Information:** For more detail on International Biological Programme sites see report.<sup>292</sup>

<sup>289</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>290</sup> Northwest Territories Protected Areas Strategy Science Team. (August 6, 2009). Ecological Representation Analysis of Conservation Zones/Protected Areas Initiatives in the April 30, 2009 Draft Sahtu Land Use Plan.

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Draft%202%20Ecological%20Representation%20Analysis.pdf)

<sup>291</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>292</sup> *ibid*



## 49. Mirage Mountain

Designation		Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying		
<b>Map #</b>	11		
<b>Area</b>	92 km <sup>2</sup>		
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>	
	-	-	
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located within the Mackenzie Mountains near the Sahtu/Yukon border. It is close to Tuésene and two of its Mountain Hot Springs.		

### Reason for Establishment

Great legends are associated with Mirage Mountain. To the Mountain People of the Tulita District it is a sacred site with significance equal to that of Bear Rock. It was included as a conservation zone upon request from the Tulita elders.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites. It is a sacred and cultural site for the Tulita people.

**Values to be Respected:** In mountain woodland caribou habitat, located along the Redstone migration route. An Important Wildlife Area for mountain woodland caribou occurs. Dall's sheep and mountain goat are also present. Plants and berries are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, camps or outposts, firewood and log timber collection.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% low. In an outfitting region with active operators.

## 50. Norman Range

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	6,095 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	0.3%	24.8%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	The entire Level IV Norman Range Ecoregion including Sam McRae Lake, Turton Lake, Chick Lake, Oscar Lake, Kelly Lake, Lennie Lake and Yamoga Rock. It is predominantly in the Tulita District.	

### For details on Conservation Zones located within, see respective Zone Descriptions:

- 51. Yamōga Fee (Yamoga Rock) CZ
- 52. Chick Lake CZ
- 53. Sam McRae Lake CZ
- 54. Turton Lake CZ
- 55. Datzımı Tué (Oscar Lake) CZ
- 56. Kelly Lake Protected Area (Land Claim) CZ
- 57. Lugedegíl Tué & Tuyehíla Tué (Kelly and Lennie Lake) CZ

### Reason for Establishment

The Level IV Norman Range Ecoregion was taken as the zone boundary. It includes conservation zones that have been significantly reduced in size to allow for development potential in the valley. This provides the wildlife habitat and harvest locations in the area with a buffer while allowing for economic development opportunities. The Norman Range encompasses a number of frequently used traditional, cultural and subsistence use sites.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Habitat for: waterfowl and migratory birds, muskox, moose, furbearers, bears and boreal woodland caribou habitat (all year). Important Wildlife Areas<sup>293</sup> for muskox, furbearers and moose, important breeding duck habitat<sup>294</sup>, a CWS key migratory bird terrestrial habitat site<sup>295</sup> and fish bearing lakes (Moon Lake, Sam McRae Lake, Turton Lake, Chick Lake, Oscar Lake, Kelly and Lennie Lake) lie in the zone. The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou herd uses the zone as fall and wintering habitat.

The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) has identified all three IBAs as key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the NWT. These IBAs represent important breeding habitat for globally and continentally significant concentrations of several species. Brackett Lake IBA is continentally significant and provides excellent breeding habitat for ducks and is used by approximately two percent of the Canadian White-fronted Goose population.<sup>296</sup>

<sup>293</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>294</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>295</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., CWS Occ. Paper No. 114.

<sup>296</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010: [http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)

Furbearer, moose, fish, barren-ground caribou, bears, berries and plants are harvested. Special Harvesting Areas for birds as per the SDMCLCA exists as do karst features, eskers and wetlands. Yamoga Rock is an important sacred site.

**Values to Take into account:** Cultural and recreation sites, cabins, tent frames, camps, outpost sites, log timber harvest, traditional trails. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area. Part of Tulita's community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 27% very high, 11% high, 16% moderate high, 32% moderate; 15% low-moderate. Oil and gas rights: exploration licences. Gravel and sand deposits. Existing and proposed infrastructure: MGP Borrow site, MGP Infrastructure buildings, MGP proposed route, MGP roads, proposed Mackenzie Valley Highway route, winter road and communications line.

**Additional Information:** For zone specific information see Zones 51-57 for details. For details on Important Bird Areas see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

## 51. Yamōga Fee (Yamoga Rock)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	92 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located within the Norman Range Special Management Zone in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

Yamōga Fee is a sacred site. It is the location of a legendary battle.

**Values to be Protected:** The entire landform of raised rock was selected as it is all considered to be sacred.

**Values to be Respected:** Important breeding duck habitat<sup>297</sup>, waterfowl habitat, Important Wildlife Area<sup>298</sup> for muskox, barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou are all found in the zone. Large numbers of muskoxen are found in the area and the large bedrock ridge may be important habitat for birds of prey. Karst is also present.

**Values to Take into account:** Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 98% moderate.

**Additional Information:** Yamōga Fee is a sacred K'asho Got'ine landmark. It is the location of the final battle between Yamoga, a legendary warrior and his enemy Konadi. According to legend, a formation on the northern face of the ridge is said to be the form of Yamoga. Details can be found in *Rakekée Gok'é Godi Places We Take Care of*<sup>299</sup> report of the Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group“(December 1999). The report recommends surface and subsurface protection.

*Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>300</sup> recommends:

- National Historic Site and Territorial Historic Park designation;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources;
- Architectural and historical documentation of buildings to examine potential for preservation and restoration;
- Surface and subsurface protection of documented sites.

<sup>297</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>298</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>299</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>300</sup> *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April-May 2001*, prepared for the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board by Jennifer Blomqvist.

## 52. Chick Lake

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	36 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	98.9%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m conservation buffer applied to the lake located in the Norman Range Special Management Zone in the K'asho Got'ine District. A 500 m conservation buffer applied to the lake	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Chick lake is fish bearing. It has furbearer habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>301</sup>, boreal woodland caribou and waterfowl habitat. Moose, furbearers and fish are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, cultural sites and cabins. Within Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% high.

<sup>301</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

## 53. Sam McCrae Lake

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	53	
<b>Area</b>	59 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	16.8%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m conservation buffer applied to the lake located in the Norman Range Special Management Zone in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

The community of Fort Good Hope requested that a 500 m conservation buffer be applied to a number of fish lakes in the K'asho Got'ine District. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The lake is fish bearing. Furbearer habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>302</sup>, waterfowl habitat, boreal woodland caribou and bears are in this zone. The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou herd inhabit the zone during the fall post-rut in November.

Moose, furbearers, barren-ground caribou and fish are harvested. Bears are harvested at the joining of Sam McCrae and Turton lakes. Karst formations are present and plants and berries are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, outpost camps. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 66% very high; 22% moderate high; 12% moderate.

<sup>302</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>



<b>54. Turton Lake</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	79 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	11.1%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m conservation buffer applied to the lake located within the Norman Range Special Management Zone in the Tulita District.	

### Reason for Establishment

The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The lake is fish bearing. Furbearer habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>303</sup>, waterfowl habitat, boreal woodland caribou, bears, CWS terrestrial habitat for migratory birds<sup>304</sup> and a Special Harvesting Area as per the *SDMCLCA* for migratory birds are all found in the zone.

Moose, furbearers and fish are harvested. Bears are harvested at the joining of Sam McRae and Turton lakes. Karst formations and berry harvest areas are present.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, outpost camps.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very high.

<sup>303</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>304</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., CWS Occ. Paper No. 114.

<b>55. Datzımı Tué (Oscar Lake)</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	70 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	53.9%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 2.5 km conservation buffer applied to the lake located within the Norman Range Special Management Zone in the Tulita District.	

### Reason for Establishment

Datzımı Tué has a 2.5 km buffer. The buffer is significantly larger than the 500 m applied to other lakes to incorporate wetland areas and smaller water bodies adjacent to the lake. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Oscar Lake is a fish bearing lake. Furbearer habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>305</sup>, waterfowl habitat, boreal woodland caribou, bears and moose are all found in the zone. Tulita has identified the zone as an area with many moose, beaver and muskrats. Moose, furbearers, fish and bears are harvested. There are Special Harvesting Areas as per the *SDMCLCA* for fish. Jackfish (pike) is plentiful. Berry picking areas are documented.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins and outpost camps, traditional trails, old dwellings.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 98% moderate.

**Additional Information:** In the *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>306</sup>, participants requested surface and subsurface protection for Oscar Lake to protect trapping, waterfowl, berry picking and archaeological sites in the area.

<sup>305</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>306</sup> *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April-May 2001*, prepared for the Sahtu Land Use Planning Board by Jennifer Blomqvist.

## 56. Kelly Lake Protected Area (Land Claim)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	273 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	0.2%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located within the Norman Range Special Management Zone in the Tulita District. The Kelly Lake Protected Area is defined as per the <i>SDMCLCA</i> .	

### Reason for Establishment

The Kelly Lake Protected Area is a parcel on the western bank of Kelly Lake as defined in S.17.4 of the *SDMCLCA*. It is to be preserved for continued traditional and cultural use. The land claim provides surface protection. The Plan provides subsurface protection.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Important Wildlife Areas<sup>307</sup> for muskox, waterfowl habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>308</sup>, karst features, wetlands, moose, waterfowl and migratory birds are present. Bears, boreal woodland and barren-ground caribou are harvested.

**Values to Take into account:** Within the Tulita community drinking water source catchment. The Tulita community has expressed interest in having the Kelly Lake heritage trail identified so that people can hike it and use it for cultural programs.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 57% very high, 16% moderate; 28% low-moderate.

**Additional Information:** The Plan adds subsurface protection to the Kelly Lake Protected Area already protected under Section 17.4 of the *Sahtu Dene and Metis Comprehensive Land Claim Agreement*. Should this Conservation Zone ever be removed or modified through future Plan amendments, it will not alter surface protection provided to the Kelly Lake Protected Areas through the land claim agreement.

<sup>307</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>308</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

## 57. Lugedegíl Tué & Tuyehíla Tué (Kelly and Lennie Lake)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	205 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	40%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located within the Norman Range Special Management Zone in the Tulita District. A 500 m buffer is applied around Lugedegíl Tué & Tuyehíla Tué.	

### Reason for Establishment

Lugedegíl Tué & Tuyehíla Tué are given a 500 m conservation buffer. The primary intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites, cultural site.

**Values to be Respected:** Upland areas around the lakes are used year-round by muskoxen. Boreal woodland caribou use the upland areas during late winter when snows are deep in the surrounding boreal forest and in summer to avoid insects and to cool down.

The lakes are known for high-quality fishing (subsistence and recreational angling) however Kelly Lake has been identified as high in natural mercury. Fish from this lake should be consumed in limited quantities especially by pregnant women and children.

There are: raptor nesting sites, furbearer habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>309</sup>, waterfowl habitat, high quality moose habitat, Important Wildlife Areas<sup>310</sup> for muskox and karst features. The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou have fall post-rut habitat in the zone. There is high concentration moose harvest, furbearers, fish, boreal woodland and barren-ground caribou harvest and Special Harvesting Area for fish as per the *SDMCLCA*. Berry and plant harvesting are also documented.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, camp sites, outpost camps, traditional trails. The Tulita community has expressed interest in having the Kelly Lake heritage trail identified so that people can hike it and use it for cultural programs. Within the Tulita community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 55% very high; 45% low-moderate.

**Additional Information:** A Phase 1 Ecological Assessment, Phase 1 Cultural Evaluation Summary and Hydrocarbon Assessment were completed in 2007 as a part of the NWT Protected Areas Strategy process. Readers are referred to these reports for additional information.<sup>311</sup> Tulita was unsuccessful in its attempt to secure a sponsoring agency for a number of cultural and sacred sites known as the Tulita Conservation Initiative (Kelly Lake was one of the sites). The community and its elders remain committed to protecting these areas through the Plan.

<sup>309</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>310</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>311</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-tci.asp>

<b>58. Doctor Lake</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	21 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	In addition to a 500 m conservation buffer around Doctor Lake, the zone includes a number of small bodies of water north-east of Norman Wells.	

### Reason for Establishment

A 500 m conservation buffer around Doctor Lake protects fish stocks and allows traditional harvest to continue. The intent is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

Doctor Lake was identified as an excellent fish lake and as a community hunting area for woodland and barren-ground caribou.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Important breeding duck habitat<sup>312</sup>, extensive karst features and habitat for moose, muskox and furbearers all occur. The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou<sup>313</sup> herd inhabits the zone during the fall and early winter. It is an excellent fish lake (whitefish) and a community hunting area for woodland and barren-ground caribou, moose and furbearers.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, camp and tent sites. Within Tulita's community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very high.

<sup>312</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>313</sup> Nagy et al. 2005. *Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose East Barren-Ground Caribou Herds*, Manuscript Report No. 167, Department of Resources, Wildlife and Economic Development, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT.

## 59. Tuwí Tué (Mahoney Lake)

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	232 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	The Mahoney Lake Conservation Zone is located 74 km north of Tulita, directly north of Willow Lake.	

### Reason for Establishment

Mahoney Lake is an important subsistence use area for the people of Tulita. It is widely known as being plentiful in whitefish and is used for barren-ground and woodland caribou harvest.

The Mahoney Massacre Site, Tuwí Tué is the location of a fight between three Hudson's Bay Company employees and a Dene family. It resulted in the death of 11 Dene men, women and children. The story is still recounted in the oral tradition of Tulita. It is important to the Dene and Metis that the area be treated with respect.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** There is important breeding duck habitat<sup>314</sup>, habitat for waterfowl and birds, moose, furbearers and extensive karst features. The Bluenose West barren-ground caribou herd inhabits the area during the fall and over winter.

It is a community hunting area for woodland and barren-ground caribou. Waterfowl, birds, furbearers and moose are also plentiful. All are harvested and extensive fishing takes place.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, cabins, camp, heritage sites. Within the Tulita community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% low-moderate.

**Additional Information:** Tuwí Tué, the Mahoney Lake Massacre Site, is located on the north-western end of Mahoney Lake. In December 1835, three Hudson's Bay Company employees left from their Fort Norman (Tulita) post to collect a cache of fish at Mahoney Lake. A Dene family were encamped near the lake and employed to provide meat and fish for the HBC post. Partly as a result of earlier problems between one of these men and a young married Dene woman, a terrible fight ensued and the three Hudson's Bay employees murdered eleven men, women and children. The men were later tried. One was sent to England for trial and then transported back to Canada, another was sentenced to hang but died while jailed and awaiting transportation. The last was set free after testifying against his accomplice.<sup>315</sup>

<sup>314</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>315</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.



This story is still recounted in the oral tradition of Tulita. A description of the event and trial proceedings can be found in Foster (1989), as referenced in *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>316</sup>, Report of the Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group, December 1999.

The *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of* and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001* recommend:

- National Historic Site designation of the Massacre Site with surface and subsurface protection;
- Oral history and archaeological research be undertaken to document and protect existing heritage resource and burials;
- Special consideration in the land use planning process.

---

<sup>316</sup> *ibid*

## 60. Three Day Lake

<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	32 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 500 m buffer is applied to the lake. It is located south of Norman Wells on the western bank of the Mackenzie River.	

### Reason for Establishment

Three Day Lake is a popular subsistence use site for the people of Norman Wells. It is a site for wildlife and berry and plant harvesting. It is known for having some of the highest moose densities in the Sahtu and for an abundance of fish, waterfowl and furbearers. The area is known as a waterfowl breeding and staging area.

The primary intent of the 500m buffer is to protect fish, water quality, riparian habitat/shorelines, waterfowl habitat, archaeological and burial sites while maintaining access for recreational and subsistence uses.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Moose are especially plentiful in the summer and fall. It is known as a breeding and staging area for waterfowl, particularly swans. The outflow of the lake – Sucker Creek – is known for having abundant grayling. Bald eagles nest on the side of the lake. Other habitat include: waterfowl and birds, furbearers, bears, boreal woodland caribou, moose, including an Important Wildlife Area<sup>317</sup> for moose and important breeding duck habitat<sup>318</sup>.

Three Day Lake is a popular moose hunting area for residents of Norman Wells. Harvested species include: waterfowl and birds, moose, fish, furbearers, bears and berries.

**Values to Take into account:** Cabins, camps, tent sites, traditional trails. Within the Tulita community drinking watershed source catchment. This area is of special importance to the MacDonald and Blondin families.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 100% very high. Oil and gas rights: exploration licence.

<sup>317</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>318</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<b>61. K'ááłǫ Tué CZ (Willow Lake CZ)</b>		
<b>Designation</b>	Conservation Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	245 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	100%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located in the Norman Range SMZ in the Tulita District. The zone includes a buffer around Willow Lake, Stone Lake, and other small bodies of water. Willow Lake is also called Brackett Lake on official maps.	

**Note: This zone is located within Zone 62 - Willow Lake Wetlands Special Management Zone. See Zone Description 62 for details.**

### Reason for Establishment

K'ááłǫ Tué CZ encompasses Willow Lake and Stone Lake. It is a key breeding area, nesting area and fall staging area for waterfowl populations of international significance. A duck banding program was established in 1995 by the US Fish and Wildlife Service, ENR, SRRB and Tulita RRC and continues to be in operation. It is one of four areas in the Sahtu identified by the Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) as Terrestrial Habitat Sites for migratory birds.

Willow Lake is a travel corridor, heritage place and the site of an important seasonal camp. It is considered the "heartland" of the K'ááłǫ Got'ine, the Willow Lake People. The Lake and wetlands support large populations of animals and have a long history as a subsistence place for hunting, trapping and fishing. Traditional stories tell of Willow Lake's importance.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Willow and Stone Lakes are productive habitat that support significant populations of: furbearers such as muskrat, mink, beaver, marten, snowshoe hares and beavers, black bears, moose, lynx and waterfowl.<sup>319</sup> Fish harvesting has long been practiced in the area. The river that comes out at Willow Lake stays open all year allowing nets to be set in December for fish throughout the winter. Jackfish (northern pike), inconnu and whitefish are especially plentiful. The Bluenose East and West barren-ground caribou herds may inhabit the zone in the fall post rut. Boreal woodland caribou occur throughout.

The site is general waterfowl and migratory bird habitat as well as a key breeding, nesting and fall staging area for waterfowl populations of international significance. It is one of four important areas in the Sahtu identified by CWS as a terrestrial habitat site for migratory birds and is important breeding duck habitat.<sup>320</sup> Willow Lake also known as Brackett Lake is a continentally significant Brackett Lake IBA. It provides excellent breeding habitat for ducks and is used by approximately two percent of the

<sup>319</sup> *International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline*, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>320</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

Canadian White-fronted Goose population.<sup>321</sup> Since 1995 a total of 20,823 ducks have been banded at the banding station (annual average of 1388 ducks), with mallards (47%) and northern pintail (32%) being the two most common species.<sup>322</sup>

An Important Wildlife Area<sup>323</sup> for furbearers, karst features, wetlands, an International Biological Programme Site<sup>324</sup> Site 24 and berry harvest sites (particularly blueberries) also exist.

Willow Lake Heritage Site and other locations associated with stories and legends.

**Values to Take into account:** Extensive traditional trails, cultural, recreational and community use areas, cabins, berry and plant harvest locations, firewood and log timber harvest sites. An outpost camp at the northern end of Willow Lake has cabins for recreational and subsistence use at various times of the year. Within the Tulita community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 15% moderate high; 82% low-moderate.

**Additional Information:** For more information on the Important Bird Areas, see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

Numerous stories relate to Willow Lake such as one where Yamoria was pursued by an elderly couple and his father-in-law. This story identifies an area for subsistence fishing. The full story can be found in *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*.<sup>325</sup>

### Conservation Initiative Status

A Phase 1 Ecological Assessment, Phase 1 Cultural Evaluation Summary and Hydrocarbon Assessment were completed in 2007 as a part of the NWT Protected Areas Strategy process. Readers are referred to these reports for additional information.<sup>326</sup> Tulita was unsuccessful in its attempt to secure a sponsoring agency for a number of cultural and sacred sites known as the Tulita Conservation Initiative (Willow Lake was one of the sites). The community and its elders remain committed to protecting these areas through the Plan.

The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of* (Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group, (December 1999) and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>327</sup> recommended:

- Designating Willow Lake as a National Historic Site with surface and subsurface protection;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources and burial sites;
- Special consideration in the land use planning process with particular focus on protecting habitat of subsistence species in the area.

---

<sup>321</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010:

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)

<sup>322</sup> Zimpfer, N. and R. Popko. 2009. Final Report Western Canada Cooperative Waterfowl Banding Program, 2009, Willow Lake, Northwest Territories. United States Fish and Wildlife Service, 8 pp.

<sup>323</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>324</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>325</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>326</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-tci.asp>

<sup>327</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

## 62. K'áálo Tué SMZ (Willow Lake Wetlands SMZ)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	12	
<b>Area</b>	1,348 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	92.1%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Surrounds the Willow Lake Conservation Zone and the wetland areas around the lake. The zone is bounded to the south by the Great Bear River Special Management Zone.	

**For more details on the Willow Lake Conservation Zone located within this zone, see Zone Description 61.**

### Reason for Establishment

The Willow Lake Wetland area encompasses Willow Lake and the surrounding wetland complex. It is a key breeding, nesting and fall staging area for waterfowl populations of international significance. A duck banding program was established in 1995 by the US Fish and Wildlife Service, ENR, SRRB and Tulita RRC and continues to be in operation. It is one of four areas in the Sahtu identified by the Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) as Terrestrial Habitat Sites for migratory birds.

Willow Lake is a travel corridor, heritage place and the site of an important seasonal camp. It is considered the "heartland", the home of the K'áálo Got'ine or Willow Lake People. The Lake and wetlands support large populations of animals and have a long history as a subsistence place for hunting, trapping and fishing. Traditional stories tell of Willow Lake's importance.

The SMZ allows for the protection of specific values while allowing for economic opportunities.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The wetland is relatively productive habitat and supports large populations of wildlife such as moose, beaver, waterfowl, fish, black bear, lynx, snowshoe hare, muskrat, mink, and marten.<sup>328</sup> The Bluenose East and West barren-ground caribou herds may inhabit the zone in the fall post rut. Boreal woodland caribou occur throughout. Moose habitat is abundant.

The site is general waterfowl and migratory bird habitat as well as a key breeding, nesting and fall staging area for waterfowl populations of international significance. It is one of four important areas in the Sahtu identified by CWS as a terrestrial habitat site for migratory birds, and important breeding duck habitat.<sup>329</sup> Willow Lake also known as Brackett Lake is a continentally significant Brackett Lake Important Bird Area. It provides excellent breeding habitat for ducks and is used by approximately two percent of the Canadian White-fronted Goose population.<sup>330</sup> Since 1995 a total of 20,823 ducks have been banded

<sup>328</sup> *International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975*, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>329</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>330</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010: [http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)

at the banding station (annual average of 1388 ducks), with mallards (47%) and northern pintail (32%) being the two most common species.<sup>331</sup>

The zone is an Important Wildlife Area for furbearers. The wetlands around Willow Lake provide high quality beaver habitat and support high beaver densities. Surveys conducted in 1989, 1997 and 2001 reported densities from 41 – 69 active beaver lodges per 100 km<sup>2</sup> in a portion of the area.<sup>332</sup> Karst features, wetlands, an IBP<sup>333</sup> Site 24 and berry harvest sites (particularly blueberries) are also documented.

Moose, fish, furbearers, barren-ground caribou and bears are harvested as are berries and plants.

**Values to Take into account:** Log timber harvest, traditional trails and an outpost camp at the northern end of Willow Lake where cabins are used for recreation and subsistence harvest at various times of the year are found. Within Tulita's community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 38% high; 19% moderate high; 38% low-moderate. Oil and gas rights: exploration licences. Existing and proposed infrastructure: winter road, MGP Proposed route, MGP Roads, Proposed Mackenzie Valley Highway route.

**Additional Information:** For details on Important Bird Areas see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

For details on Willow Lake or the Willow Lake Conservation Zone, see Zone Description 61 or "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of."<sup>334</sup>

---

<sup>331</sup> Zimpfer, N. and R. Popko. 2009. Final Report Western Canada Cooperative Waterfowl Banding Program, 2009, Willow Lake, Northwest Territories. United States Fish and Wildlife Service, 8 pp.

<sup>332</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>333</sup> International Biological Program (IBP) Ecological Sites in Subarctic Canada, Areas recommended as Ecological Sites In Region 10, Yukon and Northwest Territories Boreal Forest to the Treeline, 1975, Edited by Dorothy K.B. Beckel, Coordinator Region 10 (Subarctic) Panel, Lethbridge, Alberta, The University of Lethbridge Production Services, CCIBP/CT

<sup>334</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.



## 63. DEH CHO (Mackenzie River)

<b>Designation</b>	Special Management Zone	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibitions: Bulk water removal	
<b>Map #</b>	13	
<b>Area</b>	6122 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	N/A	39.7%
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	A 5 km buffer applies to the length of the Mackenzie River as it runs through the SSA. Lands within the community boundaries of Tulita, Norman Wells and Fort Good Hope are exempt from the Plan.	

### Reasons for Establishment

The Deh Cho is identified as a Special Management Zone to protect the water quality, riparian habitat, cultural/heritage sites, areas that are important for wildlife and wildlife harvesting. SMZ designation will also allow for continued use of the river as an important regional and territorial transportation corridor (barge traffic, landing sites, winter road).

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The water quality and riparian habitat is of primary concern. The Mackenzie River and its basin provide important wildlife habitat for a number of species such as moose, migratory birds, waterfowl, boreal woodland caribou, furbearers and fish. Important Wildlife Areas<sup>335</sup> for furbearers, moose and muskox, CWS Territorial Migratory Bird Habitat Sites<sup>336</sup>, important resting stops and feeding areas for migratory birds and waterfowl, important breeding duck<sup>337</sup> sites and riparian areas with high moose density in winter time all exist in the zone.

The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) has identified all three Important Bird Areas that occur in the SSA as key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the NWT. These IBAs represent important breeding habitat for globally and continentally significant concentrations of several species. Two Important Bird Areas (IBA) as identified by CWS are located within this zone. The Lower Mackenzie River Islands IBA, a globally significant site, is a major stopover along the Western Central Flyway, hosting as many as 112,800 waterfowl and most of the Western Central Flyway population of Snow Geese (estimated to be half a million) in spring. The Middle Mackenzie River Islands, is visited by birds such as the Greater White-fronted Goose, Canada Goose, Tundra Swans as well as many duck species during annual spring migrations. Between two and six percent of the global population of Snow Goose congregate in the Middle Mackenzie River Islands IBA.<sup>338</sup>

The Deh Cho (Big River) or Mackenzie River is a symbolic focal point of Sahtu Dene and Metis culture and history. It is a significant heritage harvest/subsistence use location for aboriginal people in and outside of the Sahtu region. The Deh Cho is associated with legends including the stories of Yamoria, a well-known culture hero.

<sup>335</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>336</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., CWS Occ. Paper No. 114.

<sup>337</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>338</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010:

[http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)

Special Harvesting Areas as per the *SDMCLCA* for moose, waterfowl and birds, plant and berry picking sites and fish camps are located along the river.

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, recreation, community gathering places, log timber collection areas, cabins. The portion of the Mackenzie River that runs through the K'asho Got'ine District occurs within the Fort Good Hope-Colville Lake Group Trapping Area. Within Fort Good Hope and Tulita's community drinking water source catchments.

**Economic Importance:** The oil and gas potential in the zone ranges from very high to moderate with exploration licences currently in effect. Two potential hydrological power development sites have also been identified. The Mackenzie River is a significant transportation corridor for the Sahtu. The river and the islands are used in the summer for barge traffic, landings and as staging sites. Certain portions of the winter road take place on the river. The Mackenzie Gas Project and Mackenzie Highway Extension both propose using the shores of the river as an infrastructure corridor.

**Additional Information:** For more information on the Important Bird Areas see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>339</sup> and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>340</sup> recommend that the following be undertaken:

- Heritage River and National Historic Site designation;
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect existing heritage resources;
- Surface protection of documented sites.

---

<sup>339</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>340</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

## 64. Mackenzie River Islands

Designation	Conservation Zone	
CRs & Prohibitions	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
Map #	13	
Area	50 km <sup>2</sup>	
Land Ownership	Sahtu Subsurface Ownership	Sahtu Surface Ownership
	-	35.7%
Location & Boundaries	The Mackenzie River Islands Conservation Zone includes a number of islands that lie within the 63. Dehcho (Mackenzie River) Special Management Zone in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

### Reason for Establishment

The Mackenzie River and its islands continue to be an important transportation corridor for the Sahtu Dene and Metis. The islands are used for hunting, fishing, trapping and for recreational and cultural activities. They provide critical domestic fisheries, are important moose and waterfowl hunting areas and are associated with numerous legends including stories of Yamoria, a Dene culture hero. Special Management allows traditional and subsistence uses to continue while providing opportunities for economic development.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological and burial sites, historical sites.

**Values to be Respected:** Riparian areas along the Mackenzie River and its Islands have high moose densities in the winter.<sup>341</sup> General moose habitat, waterfowl and migratory bird habitat, furbearer habitat, important breeding duck habitat<sup>342</sup>, Important Wildlife Area for moose, CWS key migratory bird habitat<sup>343</sup> and terrestrial bird habitat sites are all found on the Islands. Barren-ground and boreal woodland caribou and muskoxen use the Islands. Special Harvesting Areas as per the *SDMCLCA* for moose, waterfowl and migratory birds are found on the islands.

The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) has identified all three IBAs as key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the NWT. These IBAs represent important breeding habitat for globally and continentally significant concentrations of several species. CWS identified an Important Bird Area, the Middle Mackenzie River Islands, which lies within this zone and is visited by birds such as the Greater White-fronted Goose, Canada Goose, Tundra Swans as well as many duck species during annual spring migrations. Between two and six percent of the global population of Snow Goose congregate in the Middle Mackenzie River Islands IBA.<sup>344</sup>

There is a high concentration of moose harvesting, fish, furbearer and waterfowl harvesting on all islands. Bear harvesting also takes place. A may-be at risk plant, *Rorippa barbareaifolia* has been documented.

<sup>341</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>342</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>343</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., CWS Occ. Paper No. 114.

<sup>344</sup> Nature Canada comments on Draft 3 dated 01/10/2010: [http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public\\_comments/Nature%20Canada\\_Oct%201-10.pdf](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/ftpfiles/public_comments/Nature%20Canada_Oct%201-10.pdf)

**Values to Take into account:** Traditional trails, cabins and fish camps, recreational areas. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 25% high; 23% moderate high; 43% moderate.

**Additional Information:** For more details on Important Bird Areas see: [www.ibacanada.ca](http://www.ibacanada.ca).

## 65. Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta (Ramparts River and Wetlands)

<b>Designation</b>	Proposed Conservation Initiative	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	13	
<b>Area</b>	14,701 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta is located north of the Mackenzie Mountains and west of Fort Good Hope in the K'asho Got'ine District.	

The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) is sponsoring the Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta Candidate Protected Area as a National Wildlife Area (NWA). It is seeking permanent protection of the area through the *Canada Wildlife Act*.

### Reason for Establishment

"Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta is a sacred place and harvesting area of the Fort Good Hope Dene and Metis. For generations it has been used for trapping, hunting, fishing and camping. It has many archaeological, burial and historic sites. The Ramparts River watershed is a critical wetland that filters millions of gallons of water per day. As a key migratory bird terrestrial habitat site, the wetlands provide excellent nesting, brood rearing and staging habitat for ducks, geese and loons. Six species at risk – peregrine falcon, grizzly bear, mountain caribou, wolverine, short-eared owl, and boreal woodland caribou – are also found within the Candidate Protected Area."<sup>345</sup>

The Ramparts River meanders "through critical wetlands and has been an important hunting, trapping and fishing area for Fort Good Hope families for generations...It is known as an excellent place to begin teaching young hunters the rules and behaviours necessary for a successful hunt."<sup>346</sup> Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta encompasses a number of named places including a sacred site, Thunderbird Place, and Fee Yee, the Ramparts, a canyon-like area along the Mackenzie River.

**Values to be Protected:** Archaeological, burial and sacred sites, historic and cultural sites.

**Values to be Respected:** The zone is habitat for boreal woodland, mountain and barren-ground caribou, moose, mountain goat, muskox, Dall's sheep, black bear, grizzly bear, wolverine, marten, beaver, muskrat, mink, red fox, wolf, lynx, snowshoe hare, peregrine falcons and numerous species of waterfowl. The zone is part of the Bonnet Plume mountain woodland caribou herd migration path and range. Grizzly bears inhabit the mountains and the valley tends to be more used by the black bears. Important Wildlife Areas<sup>347</sup> for mountain woodland caribou, Dall's sheep, moose and furbearers are documented.

The wetlands and the Ramparts River support high densities of moose including the Alaska-Yukon subspecies and the Northwestern moose subspecies (some of the highest Northwest Territories density populations have been recorded in the zone).

<sup>345</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-tsudeniline.asp>

<sup>346</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews. P. 68

<sup>347</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

The wetland is quality beaver habitat and has been called “the best beaver habitat north of Fort Simpson” (Wooley 1974). Surveys in 1989, 1997, and 2001 found densities from 58 – 86 active beaver lodges per 100 km<sup>2</sup> for a portion of the wetlands.<sup>348</sup>

The wetlands are critical habitat for thousands of nesting, brood-rearing and staging waterfowl of numerous species. The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) has identified the wetlands as a Key Habitat Site as the zone is habitat for more than 1% of the Canadian population of scaup, scoter and pacific loons and other species of waterfowl and birds.

Since 1970 surveys held every 5 years have observed nesting Peregrine falcons.<sup>349</sup> This zone is one of three high density sites in the Mackenzie Valley believed to support at least half of the valley’s population of nesting peregrine falcons.<sup>350</sup> CWS and DUC have identified the entire wetlands as a key waterfowl, bird habitat site and important breeding duck habitat<sup>351</sup>. The area is also a critical waterfowl breeding site, critical raptor nesting area and a CWS key migratory bird terrestrial habitat<sup>352</sup> site.

Most of the lakes in the wetlands contain pike and a few of the larger lakes are known to have whitefish. The Ramparts Rapids are a spawning area for cisco and river whitefish.<sup>353</sup>

Harvested species include waterfowl and birds, furbearers (amongst one of the highest concentrations throughout the SSA), fish, bears, caribou, and particularly important, moose, beaver and muskrat. There is a Special Harvesting Area for fish as per the *SDMCLCA*. Plants and berries are also harvested.

Ecologically significant features include karst, eskers, wetlands and glacial refugia.

**Values to Take into account:** Many named places including a sacred site, the Thunderbird Place<sup>354</sup>, traditional trails lead into the Ramparts Wetlands, outpost camps, fish camps, cabins, camps and tent sites, cabins currently in use, log timber harvesting are all found in the zone. Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area. Within Fort Good Hope’s community drinking water source catchment.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 76% high; 14% moderate high. Gravel and sand deposits. In an outfitting region with two active outfitters.

#### **Additional Information: Sacred and Special Places<sup>355</sup>**

##### **Thunderbird Place**

The Thunderbird Place is located on a sharp bend in the Ramparts River. For a long time it was a dangerous place where a giant Thunderbird lived and killed travellers. One day an elder with powerful medicine killed the Thunderbird, making river travel safe again. “There are several place in the Sahtu Settlement Area where other water monsters live or have lived and these places are always considered dangerous, requiring special rituals or practices when travelling nearby.” To this day, people still feel uneasy when travelling past the Thunderbird Place.

---

<sup>348</sup> *ibid*

<sup>349</sup> Haas, C.A., & Wilson, J.M., Important Wildlife Areas in the Western Northwest Territories, 2012, Manuscript Report No. 221, Environment and Natural Resources, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, NT

<sup>350</sup> *ibid*

<sup>351</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada. Comments on Draft 2 SLUP, July 31/09. <http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org/website/web-content/index.html>

<sup>352</sup> Latour, P.B, Leger, J, Hines, J.E., Mallory, M.L., Mulders, D.L., Gilchrist, H.G., Smith, P.A., & Dickson, D.L., 2008, *Key migratory bird terrestrial habitat sites in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut*, 3rd. Ed., CWS Occ. Paper No. 114.

<sup>353</sup> John T’seleie, Draft 2 Comments available at: [www.sahtulanduseplan.org](http://www.sahtulanduseplan.org)

<sup>354</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). *Rakekée Gok’é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>355</sup> *ibid*



### **Fee Yee, The Ramparts**

"The only canyon-like feature on the Mackenzie River, the Ramparts is a unique and important landmark. Called Fee Yee in Slavey, it is the location of an important domestic fishery. In historic times Fee Yee was also used as a refuge for local people to defend against raiding parties of Inuit travelling upstream from the coast."

Many of the topographic features at the Fee Yee were created by a giant, an important legendary hero for the people of Fort Good Hope. A number of places within or near the Ramparts are named or have stories associated with them. "The Ramparts rapids were created when Wichididelle threw rocks at a giant beaver. There's also a place where he laid down for a nap – his head and footprints can still be seen today. The small waterfall is where he had a pee... His boat is located above the rapids (Spruce Island is said to be his overturned boat)... His boat is still there."

The reports *Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of*<sup>356</sup> and *Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops April – May, 2001*<sup>357</sup> recommend a combination of the following actions:

### **Fee Yee, The Ramparts**

- Designate a National Historic Site
- Protect the site by extending Fort Good Hope's community boundary to encompass area and provide for a local management regime. Designate as Commissioner's Land.

### **Ramparts River and Wetlands**

- Designate a Heritage River
- Designate the wetlands a Migratory Bird Sanctuary to protect waterfowl nesting and staging areas
- Designate the river and wetlands a Critical Wildlife Area to protect subsistence and trapping species
- Oral history and archaeological research to document and protect heritage resources and burials
- Surface protection of documented sites

### **The Thunderbird Place**

- Undertake oral history research and give special consideration in the land use planning process

### **Conservation Initiative Status**<sup>358</sup>

The Canadian Wildlife Service (CWS) is sponsoring the Ts'ude niline Tu'eyeta Candidate Protected Area and is seeking permanent protection for the area through the *Canada Wildlife Act*. The Yamoga Land Corporation is the local lead.

### **Other Documentation:**

Phase 1 and 2 Socio-Economic, Non-Renewable and Ecological Assessments have been completed as a requirement of the PAS process. A Hydrocarbon Potential report, Cultural Documentation and a Draft Renewable Resource Assessment have also been completed. Readers are referred to the NWT PAS website for full reports.<sup>359</sup>

---

<sup>356</sup> Prepared by The Sahtu Heritage Places and Sites Joint Working Group. January 2000 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). "Rakekée Gok'é Godi: Places We Take Care Of. Written by Tom Andrews.

<sup>357</sup> Mapping Our Future, Report on Community Surveys and Workshops, April – May, 2001, Sahtu Land Use Planning Board, prepared by Jennifer Blomqvist

<sup>358</sup> PAS website: <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-tsudeniline.asp>

<sup>359</sup> <http://www.nwtpas.ca/area-tsudeniline.asp>

## 66. Tuktut Nogait (Sahtu Expansion)

<b>Designation</b>	Proposed Conservation Initiative	
<b>CRs &amp; Prohibitions</b>	CRs# 1-14 Prohibition: Bulk water removal; Mining E&D; Oil and Gas E&D; Power Development; Forestry; Quarrying	
<b>Map #</b>	8	
<b>Area</b>	1,871 km <sup>2</sup>	
<b>Land Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Subsurface Ownership</b>	<b>Sahtu Surface Ownership</b>
	-	-
<b>Location &amp; Boundaries</b>	Located in the far north-eastern corner of the SSA on the border with the Inuvialuit Settlement Region and Nunavut.	

In the Inuvialuit Settlement Region, Tuktut Nogait is a National Park under the administration of Parks Canada. Parks Canada and the Deline Land Corporation have signed an Impact and Benefit Agreement (2005) to expand the National Park into the Sahtu Settlement Area. When the Canada National Parks Act is amended to include the Sahtu Part of Tuktut Nogait, the the Sahtu Land Use Plan will no longer apply. For greater details on valued components and status of park legislation, contact Parks Canada.

### Reason for Establishment

"Tuktut Nogait protects a portion of the Tundra Hills Natural Region, a representative natural area of Canadian significance. The landscape of Tuktut Nogait consists largely of vast expanses of tundra, broadly rolling uplands and lowlands, deep canyons, stunning waterfalls and crystal clear rivers."<sup>360</sup>

"The park encompasses most of the core calving, and post-calving grounds of the Bluenose West caribou herd. In mid-June, the herd returns to the park to give birth. Tuktut Nogait is a major breeding and nesting ground for a wide variety of migratory birds."<sup>361</sup>

**Values to be Protected:** Recent surveys have identified over 360 archaeological sites such as tent rings, caches, rock alignments, meat drying areas and hunting blinds.<sup>362</sup>

**Values to be Respected:** "A wide variety of mammals are found in the park, including caribou, muskoxen, grizzly bears, wolves, red foxes, wolverines, arctic ground squirrels and collared lemmings. Raptors such as peregrine falcons, rough legged hawks, gyrfalcons and golden eagles nest along the steep walls of the river canyons. Other notable bird species include: tundra swans, sandhill cranes, lapland longspurs, horned larks, jaegers, golden plovers, and both arctic and red throated loons. The park's waters are home to arctic char, grayling, lake trout and whitefish."<sup>363</sup>

"Mammals and birds are most concentrated along the park's river corridors. The Hornaday River supports an important subsistence fishery of arctic char for the residents of Paulatuk."

**Values to Take into account:** Within the Fort Good Hope/Colville Lake Group Trapping Area.

**Economic Importance:** Oil and gas potential: 95% low-moderate.

**Additional Information:** For details on Tuktut Nogait National Park, contact Parks Canada.

<sup>360</sup> <http://www.pc.gc.ca/eng/pn-np/nt/tuktutnogait/natcul/natcul1.aspx>

<sup>361</sup> *ibid*

<sup>362</sup> *ibid*

<sup>363</sup> <http://www.pc.gc.ca/eng/pn-np/nt/tuktutnogait/natcul/natcul1.aspx>

## Appendix 2. Map References and Data Sources

### **Map 1 - Sahtu Settlement Zone**

- Established Protected Areas - Northwest Territories Protected Areas Strategy, 2012
- Community Boundaries - Department of Municipal and Community Affairs, 2012
- North America Boundaries and Admin Areas - Natural Resources Canada, Instituto Nacional de Estadística Geografía e Informática and the U.S. Geological Survey, 2006
- Sahtu Boundary - Government of Canada, Natural Resources Canada, Canada Lands Survey System, National Framework Canada Lands Administrative Boundary (CLAB) Level 1, 2012
- Canadian Digital Elevation Data - Government of Canada, Natural Resources Canada, Earth Sciences Sector, Centre for Topographic Information, 2000
- Rivers and Lakes - Compiled from Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada - Topographic Maps 1:250,000 and Department of National Defense, Mapping and Charting Establishment, Canada - Topographic Maps - 1:250,000, 1975
- District Boundaries - Sahtu GIS Project, 2011
- Access Roads - Sahtu Land and Water Board, 2009
- Winter Roads - Sahtu GIS Project, 2003

### **Map 2 - Land Use Zones**

- Pipeline Corridor - Mackenzie Valley Gas Project & Imperial Oil Resource Venture Ltd., 2013
- Proposed Mackenzie Valley Highway - AMEC & EBA, 2012
- District Boundaries - Sahtu GIS Project, 2011
- Access Roads - Sahtu Land and Water Board, 2009
- Winter Roads - Sahtu GIS Project, 2003
- Rivers and Lakes - Compiled from Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada - Topographic Maps 1:250,000 and Department of National Defense, Mapping and Charting Establishment, Canada - Topographic Maps - 1:250,000, 1975
- Sahtu Boundary - Government of Canada, Natural Resources Canada, Canada Lands Survey System, National Framework Canada Lands Administrative Boundary (CLAB) Level 1, 2012

### **Map 3 - Barren-Ground Caribou and Woodland Caribou Range**

- Woodland Caribou - South Nahanni Herd (Summer Habitat - 95% kernel), Protected Areas Establishment Branch, Parks Canada, 2010.
- Boreal Woodland Caribou Range - Environment Canada, Government of Canada, "Anthropogenic disturbance footprint within boreal caribou ranges across Canada", July 2011
- Mountain Woodland Caribou Range - Manager Wildlife Research and Monitoring, Norman Wells, ENR-Sahtu, GNWT, 2003.
- Bluenose West and Bluenose West Caribou Range, GNWT, Department of Resources, Wildlife, and Economic Development, "Seasonal Ranges of the Cape Bathurst, Bluenose-West and Bluenose-East Barren Ground Caribou Herds", J.A. Nagy, W.H. Wright, T.M. Slack and A.M. Veitch, 2005
- Sahtu Land Use Plan Zoning - Sahtu Land Use Planning Board - December 2012

#### **Map 4 - Sensitive Species and Features**

- May-Be-At-Risk Plants, GNWT, Department of Environment and Natural Resources - NWT Virtual Herbarium, 2009
- Hot and Warm Springs - GNWT, Department of Environment and Natural Resources, 2009
- Karst - GNWT, Department of Environment and Natural Resources, "Mapping Known and Potential Karst Areas in the Northwest Territories ", Derek Ford, 2008
- Area of Ice Patches, NWT Ice Patch Study, Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre, 2011
- Glacial Refugia, Geological Survey of Canada, "Deglaciation of North America - Open File 1574", Dyke, A.S., Moore, A. And Roberston, L., 2003
- Density of Mineral Licks, GNWT, Wildlife Division, Environment and Natural Resources, 2009
- Lakes and Rivers (Edited) - Compiled from Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada - Topographic Maps 1:250,000 and Department of National Defense, Mapping and Charting Establishment, Canada - Topographic Maps - 1:250,000, 1975

#### **Map 5 - 13 Zone Description Maps**

- Sahtu Land Use Plan Zoning - Sahtu Land Use Planning Board - December 2012
- Sahtu Settlement Lands - Government of Canada, Natural Resources Canada, Earth Sciences Sector, Geomatic Canada, Surveyor General Branch, Aboriginal Lands Dataset - Edition 2, 2009
- Sahtu Winter Road, Sahtu GIS Project, 2003
- Pipeline Corridor - Mackenzie Valley Gas Project & Imperial Oil Resource Venture Ltd., 2013
- Lakes and Rivers - Compiled from Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada - Topographic Maps 1:250,000 and Department of National Defense, Mapping and Charting Establishment, Canada - Topographic Maps - 1:250,000, 1975